College Caesar
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

(1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
(2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
(3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-10: 0-9843065-7-9

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35 Lessons by Title</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface to the Series</td>
<td>vii-viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>ix-x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline of the <em>Bellum Gallicum</em></td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronology of the Life of Julius Caesar</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Use this Commentary</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Core Vocabulary</td>
<td>xiv-xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Selections from Caesar’s *Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō*

- Book I.1-7 (Lessons 1-5) .............................................................................2-11
  The Helvetian Campaign

- Book IV.24-35 (Lessons 6-12) .................................................................12-25
  First Expedition to Britain

- Book VI.13-20 (Lessons 13-17) .................................................................26-35
  Customs Among the Gauls

- Book V.24-48 (Lessons 18-35) .................................................................36-71
  Gauls Attack the Romans in Winter-Quarters

- Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives...............................................................72-73
- Verb Synopses...............................................................................................74-84
- Alphabetized Core Vocabulary......................................................................85-91
35 Lessons by Title

Book 1

Lesson 1  The Divisions Within Gaul
Lesson 2  Orgetorix Forms a Conspiracy to Emigrate from Helvetia
Lesson 3  Orgetorix’s Conspiracy Fails
Lesson 4  The Helvetians Follow Orgetorix’s Plan: Two Possible Routes
Lesson 5  Caesar Decides to Stop the Helvetians

Book 4

Lesson 6  The Britons Approach the Romans as They Land
Lesson 7  The Romans Land and Give Chase to the Britons
Lesson 8  The Britons Seek Peace, and the Roman Cavalry is Delayed
Lesson 9  The Fleet is Damaged in the Storm
Lesson 10  The Britons Attack the Romans (I)
Lesson 11  The Britons Attack the Romans (II)
Lesson 12  The Britons are Defeated by the Romans

Book 6

Lesson 13  Two Classes of Nobility: Druids and Knights
Lesson 14  The Druids: Privileges, Education, and Beliefs
Lesson 15  The Knights and Human Sacrifice
Lesson 16  Gods and Goddesses Among the Gauls
Lesson 17  Marriages, Funerals, and Rumors

Book 5

Lesson 18  Roman Winter Quarters are Scattered Among the Gauls
Lesson 19  Tasgetius is Killed and Ambiorix Revolts
Lesson 20  Ambiorix Advises Sabinus to Leave Camp
Lesson 21  Sabinus’ Officiers Advise Against Leaving the Camp
Lesson 22  Sabinus Argues in Favor of Leaving the Camp
Lesson 23  Cotta Argues Against Leaving the Camp, but the Romans Depart
Lesson 24  The Romans are Ambushed, and Sabinus is Despondent
Lesson 25  Cotta Takes Command as the Romans are Surrounded
Lesson 26  Cotta is Wounded, and Sabinus Seeks out Ambiorix
Lesson 27  Ambiorix Kills Sabinus and Incites the Nervii
Lesson 28  The Nevii and other Gauls Attack Cicero’s Camp
Lesson 29  Cicero Resists as the Nevii Advise Departure
Lesson 30  The Nevii Continue the Siege and Set Fire to Cicero’s Camp
Lesson 31  Cicero’s Men Resist Amid the Flames
Lesson 32  The Story of Vorenus and Pullo
Lesson 33  Caesar is Informed and Acts Decisively
Lesson 34  Caesar Sends Orders to Crassus and Labienus
Lesson 35  Caesar Sends Word of his Arrival to Cicero
Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make selections from Julius Caesar’s *Gallic War* as accessible as possible to intermediate-level Latin readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Latin. To accomplish this goal, I have decided to eschew the traditional commentary format and adopt the best features of Clyde Pharr’s *Aeneid*.

Beneath each of the 35 sections, hereafter called “lessons,” of the Latin text are all the corresponding vocabulary words that occur four or fewer times in the commentary, arranged alphabetically in two columns. On the page facing the Latin text and vocabulary is a single page of grammar commentary, which is organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged into two columns. This format allows me to include as much information as possible and yet insure that the entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers. To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core vocabulary list at the beginning of this commentary that includes all words occurring five or more times arranged according to the lesson in which readers first encounter them. An alphabetized form of this list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and historical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. Assuming that readers complete their initial study of Latin with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to almost all subjunctive and accusative-infinitive constructions, identify unusual verbs forms and noun constructions, and in general explain aspects of the Latin that they should have encountered in their elementary review of Latin grammar but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

For instructors, I have intentionally placed the readings in Book VI before those in Book V. This arrangement conveniently breaks the book into halves of 17 and 18 lessons so that those reading in college may complete one lesson per class and have a midterm after L. 17. For those reading in a high school block schedule (90 90-minute classes), the order allows teachers to complete one lesson per day and administer several tests by the end of the 4.5-
week (22-day) interim and to finish all 35 lessons by the 9-week (45 day) interim. Year-long Latin programs can devote two days to each lesson and finish well within a 90-day semester.

**Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies**

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are occasions where a dictionary is necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Latin, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved can be better spent reading more Latin, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers review the running core vocabulary list (5 or more times) as soon as possible. Once they have mastered these words, I encourage them to single out, drill, and memorize the words that occur 3-4 times as they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

**Print on Demand Books**

This volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book, and as such it gives its author distinct freedoms not available in traditional publications. Since this book is no more than a pdf file waiting to be printed, I am able to respond very quickly to readers’ recommended changes and create an revised edition that is available online or in retail within 24 hours. If you would like to suggest changes or download a free .pdf copy of this commentary, please see one of the addresses below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Finally, I would like to thank Christopher Lauber at the Fordham Preparatory School and Jim Westcot at Blue Ridge High School for reading through the text and commentary and saving readers from innumerable errors, both great and small. I am very grateful for their sound judgment and keen observations.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
http://www.geoffreysteadman.com
Introduction to Caesar’s Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō

Gaius Julius Caesar was a ruthless killer and consummate writer. He did not come to Gaul to rescue the people from themselves; he came to conquer, and his commentaries on the Bellum Gallicum were a vehicle to magnify his reputation among the Roman people. Nowhere are these two traits of Caesar better illustrated than in the passage below from Book I.12. In an effort to stop the 368,000 Helvetians from migrating to Western Gaul, Caesar pursues with three legions and intercepts one-fourth of the Helvetians (up to 92,000) as they are about to cross the Arar river and rejoin those who have already crossed. What ensues is a slaughter:

I.12 Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnis Haeduorum et Sēquanorum in Rhōdānum īnfluit, incredibili lenitāte, ita ut ocufīs in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvetī rātibus ac lintribus iunctīs transībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certīorum factus est trēs iam partēs cōplārum Helvetiōs id flūmen tradīxisse, quārtam vērō partem cītrā flūmen Ararīm reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nondum flūmen transīrētur.

Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēśē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proxīmās silvās abdidērunt. Is pagus appellābātūr Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est. Hic pāgus ēnūs, cum domō exīset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium consulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium quae pars cīvitātis Helvetiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Romanō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenam persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar pōn sōlum públicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Piśonis avum, L. Piśōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī ēōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

The passage is rich in rhetorical devices which Caesar employs to dehumanize the enemy, downplay the loss of life, and yet magnify his image as a Roman general. First, Caesar does not depict the Helvetians as human beings worthy of sympathy. In lines 4-7 he refers to the enemy with the banal term “partem,” and in line 7, the only line which depicts the attack itself, he employs nondescript pronouns and adjectives such as “eōs,” “eōrum,” and “reliquī” which suggest that Caesar is attacking a faceless enemy rather than an entire community. In line 4, when he refers to the Helvetians as “cōplārum,” his word choice is not simply vague but misleading. The word cōpiae can refer to “supplies” or “baggage” and rightly describe the long train of Helvetians travelling with their possessions, but throughout Caesar’s writings, the word denotes “troops;” and so, when Caesar uses this word to describe the Helvetians, he perhaps intentionally suggests that he is facing armed men rather than unarmed innocents.
Since in lines 8-9 Caesar refers to the group which he attacks as a pagus, one of the four political districts of Helvetia, we can conclude that Caesar in fact attacked men and women of all ages. Thus, when Caesar describes those whom he attacked as “those weighed down and unsuspecting” (eōs impedītōs et inopīnāntēs, l. 7), though the passage may lead us to believe that these are cōpiae, troops, hindered by their packs, they are more likely men and women of all ages weighed down not by weapons but by the young, by the sick, and by the elderly.

Besides word choice, another rhetorical strategy that Caesar employs involves the relative size and arrangement of passages in his narrative. Elsewhere, Caesar is very detailed in his descriptions of battles. Here, he devotes only two lines (7-8) to the attack itself, but six (1-6) to an introduction and another nine (8-16) to his justification. In doing so, Caesar not only minimizes the importance of an attack on 92,000 but also stresses the lengthier justification—making his defense rather than the slaughter the most memorable passage in the account.

Not surprisingly, even Caesar’s justification strains credulity. Caesar claims that “in the memory of our fathers” (patrūm nostrōrum memorīā, 10) the same part of Helvetia that he attacked had killed the consul Cassius and enslaved his soldiers. Caesar’s portrayal makes the consul’s death seem recent and Caesar’s action a timely response, but from other sources we know that Cassius was killed in 107 BC, 50 years before Caesar’s attack. Caesar’s dating appears intentionally vague. Caesar is likewise misleading when he says that his encounter with the district which killed Cassius was “either by chance or by the plan of the immortal gods” (sīve cāsū sive cōnsiliō dēōrum, 11): he not so subtly suggests that the gods approve his action and therefore readers should look upon Caesar as both just and favored by the gods.

Caesar’s ploys do not stop there. In addition to referring to himself in the third person, which makes his account seem objective rather than biased, he asserts in lines 14-16 that he is avenging not only a public injustice but a private wrong: the grandfather of Caesar’s father-in-law was killed along with Cassius. Even if the Romans found such a claim on behalf of a distant relative credible, the fact that Caesar did not know he was attacking this particular pagus shows that, whatever the outcome, vengeance was not among his primary motives.

As readers, therefore, we should view Caesar’s Bellum Gallicum not as a boring rehash of war but, just as the passage above, a lively attempt to depict events in a way that deflects blame and increases Caesar’s reputation among the Romans. Whether Caesar is vilifying the enemy (Book 1, 6) or drawing attention away from his haste and lack of preparation (Book 4, 5), we should be sceptical of Caesar’s account and ever vigilant to distinguish fact from bias.
Outline of the Bellum Gallicum

Scholars debate when Caesar wrote his Commentaries. One appealing theory is that he—perhaps with the help of staff—wrote and published each book individually while settled in winter-quarters. Such timing would have allowed Caesar to report his campaigns to the Senate and, more importantly, respond immediately to less favorable or accusatory reports spread by his political enemies.

**Book 1 (58 BC): Campaign against the Helvetians. Campaign against Ariovistus.**
Caesar departs from the province of Transalpine Gaul, where he is currently governor, to stop the migration of 368,000 Helvetians from Helvetia, modern Switzerland, to western Gaul. Caesar then turns his forces against Ariovistus and the Germans in Eastern Gaul and drives them across the Rhine river, the customary boundary between the Gauls and Germans.

**Book 2 (57 BC): Campaign against the Belgians.**
The Belgian Gauls amass forces to resist the Romans, and Caesar marches toward them. The Remi, a Belgic tribe, agree to assist Caesar. The fighting that ensues, particularly with the Belgian Nervii, is among the fiercest in the entire Gallic War. The Romans emerge victorious.

**Book 3 (56 BC): Campaign against the Veneti**
As troops under Servius Galba fend off attacks by Gauls in the Alps, the Veneti, a tribe in northwest Gaul on the coast of the Atlantic, seize and imprison Roman envoys. Caesar’s response is to fight the seaworthy Veneti on the Atlantic ocean, capture their fortresses, and execute their leaders for seizing the Roman envoys. In the meantime, the quaestor Marcus Crassus defeats the Aquitani to the south.

**Book 4 (55 BC): Caesar Bridges the Rhine. First Expedition to Britain**
The Suebi along with other Germanic tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, venture west across the Rhine into Belgian territory to avoid the fierce Germanic Suevi. After negotiations, Caesar repulses the Germans, builds a bridge to span the Rhine within ten days, and after brief skirmishes returns to Gaul. In late August, Caesar makes his initial expedition to Britain.

**Book 5 (54 BC): Second Expedition to Britain.**
After landing in Britain unopposed, he proceeds inland and fights with Britons under the leadership of Cassivellaunus. After Caesar subdued Cassivellaunus at Kent, he returns to Gaul. On account of low grain supplies, the Romans settle into scattered winter-quarters, which are subsequently attacked by the Gauls. While the forces under the legates Titurius and Cotta are overwhelmed by the leader Ambiorix, those under Cicero and Labienus prevail over the Nervii and Treveri respectively.

**Book 6 (53 BC): Expedition to Germany. Customs among the Gauls and Germans.**
As Labienus defeats the Treveri, Caesar assists Cicero’s camp and pursues Ambiorix and the Eburones. He briefly crosses the Rhine river to prevent Ambiorix from receiving assistance from the Germans, but Amborix continues to elude the Romans. Caesar describes the organization and customs of the Gauls, the religion and warfare among the Germans, and the animals found in the Hercynian forest in Germania.

**Book 7 (52 BC): The Gauls Rally and Fall under Vercingetorix**
The Gauls rally under the leader Vercingetorix. After several sieges and battles, Caesar besieges Vercingetorix and the main Gaul force at Alesia. When the Gauls eventually surrender, Vercingetorix is led to Rome, where he will eventually be led in chains and executed to celebrate Caesar’s triumph.

**Book 8 (51 BC): Written by Aulus Hirtius, a legate of Caesar, possibly after Julius Caesar’s death, the book details how Caesars quells small uprisings and rewards loyal Romans and Gauls with gifts.**
The Life of Julius Caesar

B.C.
100  Caesar is born on July 12th
87   Flamen Dialis, selected to priesthood
83   Marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna
80-78 Serves in the army in Asia Minor
76-75 Studies oratory in Rhodes
68   Quaestor, elected
67   Marries Pompeia
65   Aedile, elected
63   Pontifex Maximus, elected
62   Praetor, elected
61   Propraetor, serves in Spain
60   Forms First Triumvirate with Pompey, Crassus
59   Consul, marries Calpurnia
58-49 Proconsul in Gaul
56   Triumvirate renewed at Luca
50   Openly breaks with Pompey
49   Crosses the Rubicon, civil war begins
48   Battle of Pharsalia in Greece, defeats Pompey’s forces
47   Subdues Egypt
46   Battle of Thapsus in North Africa, defeats Cato and senators, Dictator for 10 years
45   Battle of Munda in Spain, defeats sons of Pompey, Imperator for life
44   Assassinated by a conspiracy on March 15th

43   Grand-nephew Gaius Octavius made heir, renamed Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus
     Second Triumvirate formed by Octavian, Mark Antony, and Lepidus
31   Battle of Actium, Octavian defeats Mark Antony and Cleopatra, becomes sole ruler
31-AD 14 Octavian receives the cognomen “Augustus,” becomes the first Emperor
How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to help readers identify the most frequent words and encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Skim through the book and familiarize yourself with every grammar box and the appendix.

2. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

   A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading. Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have already reviewed most of these words in first year Latin and can devote their efforts to mastering the handful of words in the initial lessons that they have never encountered.

   B. Download and use the core list flashcards available online (ppt or jpg format). Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long-term memory. Flashcards are particularly efficient at promoting repetition. As you work, delete flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

Digital flashcards for less frequent vocabulary (occurring 3-4 times) will appear online in time.

3. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

   A. Persistence counts. Caesar is very consistent in his use of vocabulary and grammar, and so while the readings will maintain the same level of difficulty, you will become a much better reader with time. The more earnestly you learn vocabulary and new grammar in the early readings, the more fluently you will be able to read later passages without much preparation.

   B. Read in Latin word order. Initially, readers have a tendency both (i) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly in order to attain a sense of the constructions and (ii) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so forth. Ideally, you should read in Latin word order. Whatever method you use, always review the sentence which you have just translated in Latin word order. Over time, as you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with Caesar increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method of reading. It is a lot of fun, and with persistence it is very satisfying.

4. Reread a passage or lesson immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Caesar’s consistent use of vocabulary and grammar makes it possible for readers to develop reading proficiency very quickly. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin and acquiring meaning without using English.

5. Reread the most recent passage or lesson immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.
Caesar Running Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following list includes all words in the Latin selections that occur five or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number in the left column indicates in which lesson the word first occurs. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesar’s words into a single list and counting them. Flashcards (.ppt and .jpg) are available online. For an alphabetized list of the core words, readers should consult the glossary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā, ab</td>
<td>away, by</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absum, -esse, āfuī</td>
<td>be absent, lack</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>to, toward; near, at</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius, -a, -ud</td>
<td>other, another, else</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animus, -īm</td>
<td>mind, spirit; pl. courage</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appellō (1)</td>
<td>to call, call by name</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atque</td>
<td>and, and also, and even</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut</td>
<td>or (aut...aut – either...or)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgae, -ārum m.</td>
<td>Belgians</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>war</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum</td>
<td>to take, capture, seize</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causa, -ae f.</td>
<td>reason, cause; case</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contineō, -ēre, -nūi, -tentum</td>
<td>to hold or keep together</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>with (+ abl.); when, since, although</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē</td>
<td>(down) from; about, concerning</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicō, -ere, dīxī, dictus</td>
<td>to say, speak, tell, call, name</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et</td>
<td>and, also, even</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiam</td>
<td>also, even, besides</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferē</td>
<td>almost, nearly, closely</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis, -is m./f.</td>
<td>end, border; territory</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, -inis n.</td>
<td>river, stream</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e</td>
<td>strong, brave, valiant</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallia, -ae f.</td>
<td>Gaul</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Gallic; subst. a Gaul</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germānus, -a, -um</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus</td>
<td>to carry (on), wage</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helvētius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Helvetian; subst. a Helvetian</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hic, haec, hoc</td>
<td>this, these</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.)</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initium, -īn.</td>
<td>beginning, entrance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter</td>
<td>between, among (+ acc.)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</td>
<td>self; the very</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, ea, id</td>
<td>this, that; he, she, it</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longē</td>
<td>far, at a distant</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noster, nostru, nostrum</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum</td>
<td>hold, maintain</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis, omne</td>
<td>every, all</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, partis, f.</td>
<td>part, share, side</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pertineō, -ēre, -tīnuī</td>
<td>to stretch out, reach, extend to</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proelium, -īn.</td>
<td>battle, combat</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus</td>
<td>keep off, prohibit</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōvincia, -ae f.</td>
<td>province</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proximus, -a, -um</td>
<td>nearest, very close</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-que</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui, quae, quod</td>
<td>who, which, that</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliquus, -a, um</td>
<td>remaining, the rest of</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhēnus, -ī m.</td>
<td>Rhine River</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhodanus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Rhone</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēquanus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Sequanian</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum, esse, fuī, futūrum</td>
<td>to be, available online</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, -a, -um</td>
<td>his, her, its, their own</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertius, -a, -um</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trēs, tria</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtūs, -ūtis f.</td>
<td>valor, manhood, excellence</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ager, agrī m.</td>
<td>field, land, farm</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter, -era, -erum</td>
<td>other (of two)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altus, -a, -um</td>
<td>high, lofty, tall</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcitia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annus, -ī m.</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud</td>
<td>among, at the house of</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum</td>
<td>to judge, think</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autem</td>
<td>however, moreover</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civitās, civitātis, f.</td>
<td>state, citizenship</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirmō (1)</td>
<td>make strong, confirm strengthen</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constitūō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtus</td>
<td>decide, establish, resolve</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copia, -ae f.</td>
<td>abundance, supply, troops</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum</td>
<td>lead, draw; consider</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē, ex</td>
<td>out from, from, out of (+ abl.)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -ē</td>
<td>easy; adv. facile, easily</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum</td>
<td>do, make, perform; grant</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finitimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>neighboring; subst. neighbors</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frūmentum, -ī n.</td>
<td>grain</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus</td>
<td>have, hold; consider</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homō, -inis m./f.</td>
<td>man, mortal, human</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperium, -ī n.</td>
<td>command, power</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferō, -ferre, -tuī, illātum</td>
<td>wage, carry on; carry on; carry on</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter, itineris n.</td>
<td>way, road, route, journey</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locus, -ī m.</td>
<td>place, region, location</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>great, large; mighty, important</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
<td>greatest, largest</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīlle pl. milia, ium n.</td>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>less, smaller</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multitúdo, inis f.</td>
<td>multitude, population, people</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerus, -ī m.</td>
<td>number, multitude</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orgetorix, -is m.</td>
<td>Orgetorix</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus, -ūs</td>
<td>pace, step</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāx, pācis f.</td>
<td>peace, quiet, rest</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permoveō, -ēre</td>
<td>to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 persuādēō, -ère, -suāsī, -suāsum: persuade, convince, 12
2 possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, avail, 40
2 præstō, -āre, -stīf, -stitus: perform, show, be better, 6
2 prō: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16
2 profectio, -ōnis f.: departure, 5
2 profecticīscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, depart, 23
2 regnum, -ī n.: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8
2 rēs, reī, f.: thing, matter, affair, business, 64
2 tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 7
2 undīque: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5
2 ut: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59
3 ac: and, and also, and even, 24
3 accipiō: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10
3 arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 7
3 cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum: to collect; compel, 11
3 cōnōr, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: to try, 6
3 diēs, -ēī m./f.: day, time, season, 33
3 dō, dare, dēdī, datum: give; grant, 18
3 īdem, eadem, idem: the same, 14
3 exercitus, -ūs m.: (trained) army, 9
3 filius, -ī m.: son, 5
3 ille, illa, illud: that, those, 22
3 incitō (1): put into motion, urge on, 5
3 maximē: exceedingly especially, 6
3 mors, mortis, f.: death, 9
3 multus, -a, -um: much, many, 11
3 nē: lest, that not, no, not, 13
3 neque: and not, nor (neque…neque = neither…nor), 27
3 nōn: not, by no means, not at all, 36
3 ob: on account of, because of (acc.), 5
3 orātio, -ionis f.: speech, speech, 8
3 per: through, across (acc.) 18
3 populus, -ī m.: people, nation, 9
3 probō (1): approve, commend, 5
3 Rōmānus, -a, -um: of Rome, Roman, 15
3 spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 6
3 tempus, temporis, n.: time, occasion, 11
4 cōnsilium, -ī n.: plan, counsel, 12
4 conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus: come together, assemble, 9
4 duo, duae, duo: two, 8
4 existimō (1): judge, consider, think, 9
4 iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: to order, command, 17
4 nihil: nothing, 10
4 nūllus, -a, -um: none, no, no one, 9
4 oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 6
4 perīculum, -ī n.: risk, danger, peril, 14
4 post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5
4 privō (1): deprive of, rob, strip from (abl.), 5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quisque, quidque</td>
<td>each one, each person</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum</td>
<td>take back, recover</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singularus, -a, -um</td>
<td>one by one, separate</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spēs, -ēī f.</td>
<td>hope, expectation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī)</td>
<td>pass (by)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūtor, -ī, ĭsus sum</td>
<td>use, employ (abl.)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum</td>
<td>to see</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventus, -ūs m.</td>
<td>arrival, approach</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar, -aris m.</td>
<td>Caesar</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certus, -a, -um</td>
<td>definite, sure, certain, reliable</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dum</td>
<td>while, as long as, until</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facultās, -tātis f.</td>
<td>opportunity, power, skill, ability</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperō (1)</td>
<td>command, order, bid</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēgātus, -ī m.</td>
<td>an envoy, legate</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legio, -ōnis f.</td>
<td>legion, (~4200 soldiers)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licet</td>
<td>impersonal, it is allowed or permitted</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīles, mīlitis, m.</td>
<td>soldier</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus</td>
<td>send, hurl, dismiss</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum</td>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sī</td>
<td>if (only), whether, in case that</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine</td>
<td>without (abl.)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>under, below, beneath, underneath</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen</td>
<td>however, nevertheless</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum</td>
<td>to hold, keep</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>üllus, -a, -um</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō, velle, voluī</td>
<td>will, wish, be willing</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum</td>
<td>turn mind to, notice</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>but; mind you; but, you say</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barbarus, -a, -um</td>
<td>foreign, savage</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum</td>
<td>to learn, come to know, pf. know</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con(n)iciō, -ere, -iēcī</td>
<td>throw together, throw, take oneself</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consuecscō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum</td>
<td>to accustom</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgredior, -ī, -gressus</td>
<td>go out, disembark</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equitātus, -ūs m.</td>
<td>cavalry</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genus, generis, n.</td>
<td>origin, kind, sort</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravīs, -e</td>
<td>heavy, serious, severe, venerable</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostis, -is m./f.</td>
<td>stranger, enemy, foe</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus -a, -um</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnitūdo, -inis f.</td>
<td>greatness, size</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manus, manūs, f.</td>
<td>hand; group</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nam</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvis, nāvis, f.</td>
<td>ship, boat</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nisi</td>
<td>if not, unless</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paulus, -a, -um</td>
<td>little, small</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pēs, pedis m.</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plērumque</td>
<td>for the most part, mostly, commonly</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propter</td>
<td>on account of, because of</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugna, -ae f.</td>
<td>battle, fight</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6 pugnō (1): to fight, 9
6 subsequeor, -ī, secūtus sum: follow after or behind, 7
6 summus, -a, -um: top of, highest (part of) 10
6 telum, -ī n.: projectile, weapon, blow, 9
6 üsus, -ūs m.: use, practice, application, 10
7 alīquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 8
7 coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9
7 conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus: see, behold, 5
7 deōsum, -esse, -fuūrum: be lacking, lack, fail, 6
7 eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 12
7 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: carry, bear, endure, 7
7 impetus, -ūs m.: attack, assault, onset, 7
7 ordo, -inis m.: order, line, array; status, 6
7 perturbō (1): confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6
7 prīmus -a -um: first, 15
7 pūblicus, -a, -um: public, common, 11
7 signum -ī, n.: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
7 subsidium, īī n.: reserve troops; third line of battle, 5
7 tantus, -a, -um: so great, so large, 10
7 tum: then, at that time, 12
7 uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two) 8
8 Britannia, -ae f.: Britain, 6
8 castra, -ōrum n.: camp, encampment, 23
8 dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report, offer 8
8 dēmonstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 5
8 nox, noctis, f.: night, 9
8 obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 5
8 petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, aim at, 7
8 sed: but, moreover, however, 13
8 sēsē: emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14
8 subitō: suddenly, 5
8 superō (1): surpass, overcome, 6
8 superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 9
8 venō, -ēre, vēnī, ventus: come, go, 14
9 accidō, -ere, accidī: to happen, fall to, 13
9 complūres n.: several, 5
9 discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: to go away, depart, 9
9 efficiō, -ere, -fěcī, -fectus: make, form, 5
9 impedimentum, -ī n.: baggage, impediment, 6
9 ita: so, thus, 7
9 itaque: and so, 6
10 casus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall 5
10 consuētūdo, -inis f.: custom, habit, 5
10 ēsī: even if, although, though, 5
10 intermittō, -ere: interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5
10 maior, maius: greater, 6
11 cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 14
11 interferció, -ere, -feci, -fectum: kill, slay, destroy, 14
11 interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 5
11 premó, -ere, pressí, pressus: check, pursue, control, 7
11 sustineó, -ère, -uī: hold up, sustain, 8
12 celeritás, -tātis f.: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5
12 celeriter: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6
12 circiter: (round) about, not far from, 7
12 nuntius, -īī m.: messenger, 6
12 quantus, -a, -um: how great, much, many, 6
13 contróversia, -ae f.: dispute, debate, 7
13 disciplīna, -ae f.: training, instruction, 5
13 Druidés, -um m.: Druids, 6
13 praemium, -īn. : reward, prize, 5
14 ibi: there, in that place, 5
14 littera, -ae f.: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12
14 ratio, ratiōnis, f.: calculation, account, method, 5
15 circumvenió, -īre: to come around, encircle, 6
15 vita, -ae, f.: life, 5
16 ponō, ponerce, posuī, positum: to put, place, 6
17 concilium, -īī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 6
18 Ambiorix, -rigis m.: Ambiorix, 15
18 Cicerònis, -ae m.: Cicero 14
18 Cotta, -ae m.: Cotta, 10
18 Crassus, -īī m.: Crassus, 5
18 Eburōnēs, -um m.: Eburones (German), 5
18 hiberna, -ōrum n.: winter-quarters, 26
18 Labiēnus, īī m.: Labienus, 5
18 Lucius, -īī m.: Lucius, 10
18 Nerviī, -ōrum m.: Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9
18 Quintus, -īī m.: Quintus, 6
18 Sabīnus, īī m.: Sabinus, 7
18 Titurius, -īī m.: Titurius, 8
19 ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnōsus: ascend, mount 2
19 oppugnātio, -tiōnis f.: an assault, 6
19 resistō, -ere, -stīfī: stand still, halt; oppose, 5
19 vallum, -īī n.: wall, fortification, palisade, 11
20 Aduātucī, -ōrum m.: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5
20 commūnis, -e: common, 6
21 salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 10
21 tātus, -a, -um: safe, secure, guarded, 7
22 calamitās, -tātis f.: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
22 quidem: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6
22 victoria, -ae f.: victory, 7
23 relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum: to leave behind, 7
25 accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 5
28 mūnītio, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 7
28 turris, turris f.: tower, walled tower, 7
32 Pullo, Pullōnis, m.: Pullo, 6 and Vorēnus, -īī m.: Vorenus, 5
Abbreviations

abs. absolute  m. masculine
acc. accusative  n. neuter
act. active  nom. nominative
adj. adjective  obj. object
adv. adverb  PPP Perfect passive participle
app. appositive  pple. participle
comp. comparative  pass passive
dat. dative  pf. perfect
dep. deponent  pl. plural
d.o. direct object  plpf. pluperfect
d. feminine  pred. predicate
fut. future  prep. preposition
gen. genitive  pres. present
imp. imperative  pron. pronoun
impf. imperfect  reflex. reflexive
impers. impersonal  rel. relative
indic. indicative  seq. sequence
i.o. indirect object  sg. singular
inf. infinitive  subj. subject or subjunctive
inter. interrogative  superl. superlative
l. line  voc. vocative
ll. lines

Citations in Caesar

The universal method for referring to pages in any edition of Caesar’s Commentarii dē Bellō Gallicō is through a sequence of two or even three numbers: e.g. IV.24.2 or 4.24. The first number denotes the book in dē Bellō Gallicō; the second number, the paragraph; and the third number, if it is included, a subsection about the length of one sentence. Throughout this commentary I have chosen to use Roman numerals to indicate the book number (e.g. IV), but it is not uncommon for scholars to use Arabic numerals (e.g. 4). The paragraph number is always an Arabic numeral and is uniform from one edition of Caesar to the next (e.g. IV.24, 4.24). In this book I place the paragraph number in boldface at the beginning of each paragraph. This system allows readers to pick up any edition of Caesar in English or Latin and, regardless of the page numbering of that edition, locate a particular passage in Caesar.

Each paragraph in dē Bellō Gallicō can also be divided into subsections, which may be included or left out of citations (e.g. 4.24.1 or simply 4.24). In this commentary I have chosen for pedagogical reasons to include the numbers of these subsections within the text itself. In a classroom setting, teachers can conveniently ask individual students to recite and translate by subsection and not have to refer awkwardly to the initial words in each sentence.

Line numbers, located in the inside margin of the text, are peculiar to this commentary. I have included them so that I can efficiently refer to words and phrases in the grammar and readers can easily locate those words and phrases. While you can refer to the line numbers in class discussions, use only the book, paragraph, and subsection numbers when you cite Caesar in written work.
I’m going to spare the defeated, I’m going to speak to the crowd. I’m going to spare the defeated, ‘cause I’m going to speak to the crowd. I’m going to teach peace to the conquered, I’m going to tame the proud.

- Bob Dylan

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff
1.1 Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, 1 aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. 2 Hī omnēs linguā, institūtūs, legibus inter sē dīfferunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propōtereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important. 4. Proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeceudent, quod fērē cotidiānīs prōelīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

5. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumna flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum, attingit etiam ab Sēquaniīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rēnum, vergit ad septentriōnēs. 6. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. 7. Aquitania ā Garumna flūmine ad Pyrenaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispānīam pertainet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Aquītānī, -ōrum m.: Aquitani, 2 Aquītānia, -ae f.: Aquitania, 1
attingō, -ere, tīgī, tāctum: touch to, border, 1 Celtae, -ārum m.: Celts, 1 commeō (1): to travel, go to and fro, 1 contendō, -ere, -ī, -nitus: strive; hasten, 4 continenter: continuously, incessantly, 1 cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3 cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 2 differō, -ferre,: differ, carry different ways, 2 dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -visus: divide, distribue, 4 effēminō (1): soften, make into women, 1 extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 2 Garumna, -ae f.: Garumna river, 4 Hispania, -ae f.: Spain, 2 hūmānītās, -tātis f.: humanity, nature, 1 importō (1): bring in, introduce, import, 1 incolō, -ere, -uī: inhabit, dwell on, 3 inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3 institūtum, i n.: institution, practice, custom, 2 lēx, -lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3 lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 2 Mātrōna, -ae f.: Matrona (Marne) river, 1 mercātor, -ōris m.: merchant, trader, 1 minimē: least of all, least, 1 mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 4 occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2 Oceānus, i m.: Oceanus, 3 orior, -iōri, orts: arise, rise, spring, 3 praecēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum: surpass, 1 proptereā: on this account, therefore, 4 Pyreneaeus, -a, -um: of the Pyrenees, 1 quoque: also, 2 saepe: often, 3 septentriōnēs, -īm m.: north, (7 stars), 3 Sēquana, -ae f.: Sequana (Seine) River, 1 sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3 spectō (1): watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3 trans: over, across (+ acc.), 3 vergō, -ere, versī: turn, bend, 1
The Divisions Within Gaul

1 est...dīvīsa: is divided; dīvīsa is a predicate adjective and not part of a perfect pass. verb quārum ūnam...aīam...tertiam: of which (parts) one (part)...another (part)...a third (part); a genitive at the beginning of the clause is often, as here, a partitive gen. (gen. of whole)

2 Aquitānī: Aquitanians (inhabit); add incolunt which is missing through ellipsis (omission)

Tertium (incolunt) quī...: (those) who... (inhabit) the third; the missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject of missing incolunt ipsōrum lingūā: in the language of (these) very ones; i.e. of the Gauls, ipse usually modifies a noun, which is missing and must be supplied; lingūā is an ablative of respect (in respect to..) nostrā: in our language; supply lingūā Celtae...Gallī: nom. predicates of appellantur lingūā, institūtiūs, légibus: in...in...in...; “in respect to...,” all three are abl. of respect

4 Garumna flūmen (dividit): subject, add verb Matrona et Sēquanā: nom. pl. with a 3rd sg. verb because the rivers form a single boundary; supply Gallōs as acc. direct object

5 Hōrum omnium: of all these; or “among all these,” partitive gen., as in line 1, Caesar often uses a genitive at the beginning of a clause and then specifies the parts within the clause proptereā quod: because; lit. “on this account because,” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)

6 Prouinciae: of the Province; i.e. Gallia Transalpina, the area in southern France controlled by the Romans. Although the word prōvincia is a general term, the Romans referred to this province as “the Province”. This edition uses the capital “P” to distinguish it from other provinces.

6 longissimē: very far; superlative adverb longē ad eōs to those...; eōs is demonstrative

7 ea quae those things which...; neut. pl.

ad effēminandōs...: for softening...; lit. “for courage going to be softened” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, readers should employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate the gerundive as a gerund (e.g. softening) and the noun modified by the gerundive as an object of the gerund

8 Germānīs: dat. with special adj. proximum

9 quiibuscum: cum quiibus Quā dē causā: for which reason; “concerning which reason” quā modifies causā; as often, Caesar places the adjective, here a relative adj., before the preposition virtūtē: in (respect to) valor; abl. respect quod: because cum...prohibent...gerunt: when...; cum + indicative, not a preposition with suīs finibus.

11 suīs finibus: from their borders; abl. of separation (a construction which includes but is not limited to place from which), governed by prohibent, “(Helvetians) keep” suīs: their; Helvetians’, reflexive possessive eōs: them; i.e. Germans, personal pronoun ipsī: (they) themselves; Helvetians

12 eōrum: their; i.e. Germans

13 eōrum: of these (three parts); partitive gen. obtinēre: ind. discourse (that clause), Gallōs is acc. subj. and quam is acc. d.o.

dictum est: it has been said; as in line 2 above

14 continētur: governs all three abl. of means, which are missing conjunctions, asyndeton

15 ab Sēquānīs...: from (the side of)...

16 oriuntur: rise; pres. deponent, orior

17 spectant in septentriónēm: looks to the northern...; i.e. opens up to the northeast orientem: eastern; “rising” sun; pres. pple.

18 eam partem: that part; demonstrative

19 ad Hispāniam: near Hispania; with est spectat: looks to...; i.e. opens up to...

Gerund-Gerundive Flip

A gerundive (effeminandus,-a,-um, line 7) is a future passive participle. It is a verbal adjective which agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Because it is awkward to translate (e.g. going to be softened), readers should often employ a “gerund-gerundive flip” and translate the gerundive as a gerund, a verbal noun (e.g. softening), and the noun modified by the gerundive as the gerund’s object. Ad + gerund + object is in fact uncommon in Latin but it is an easy way to translate ad + noun + gerundive into suitable English. This is a popular construction in Caesar. So, be prepared.

Flip

Ad animōs effēminandōs for courage (going) to be softened

ad effēminandum animōs for softening courage
2.1 Apud Helvetiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, et M. Pīsōnē cōnsulibus, regnī cupiditātē inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus copīs exīrent: 2. perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potūrī.

3. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātrā Helvetiōs continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēno lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvetiōm ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvetiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhōdānō, quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiōs dividit. 4. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īnferre possent; 5. Quā ex parte homīnēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 6. Prō multītūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longītūdīnem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātītūdīnem CLXXX patēbant.

3.1 Hīs rēbus adductī et auctūritātē Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frumentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amīcītiam cōnfīrmarē. 2. Ad eās rēs cōnfiendiēs biennium sībi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmarē.
Orgetorix Forms a Conspiracy to Emigrate from Helvetia

1 nōbilissimus, ditisissimus: superlative adj.s. 
fuit: pf. sum, esse 
M. Messalā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus: when 
Marcus Messala and Marcus (Pupius) Piso 
were consuls; “with Messala and Piso (being) 
consuls” abl. abs. i.e. 61 BC, Romans named 
the year after their annually elected consuls; 
since there is no pple. for sum, esse, the subject 
and predicate are the abl. abs. 
2 regnī: for the kingship; objective gen. governed 
by cupiditāte, equivalent to "he desires kingship 
3 persuāsit ut…: persuaded (dative) that…; this 
common verb in Caesar governs an indirect 
command (ut + impf. subj. in secondary seq.) 
4 exīrent: they come out; impf. subjunctive, exēō, 
xīre in an ind. command, which can often be 
translated as an inf.: “persuaded…to come out” 
perfacic esse…: (and) that it is very easy…; 
ind. discourse also governed by persuāsit 
above; asyndeton, supply a conjunction between 
the ind. command above and perfacic esse 
cum…praestārent: since they excelled; causal 
with impf. subjunctive governing abl. respect 
tōtius: gen. sg. (-iōs) modifying Galliae 
5 potīrī: to possess; dep. inf. potior governs an 
ablative object 
6 id…persuāsit: he persuaded them (to do) this 
hóc…quod: by this (reason). because; abl. 
of cause 
facilius: comparative adv. facilis, facile 
7 únā ex parte: on one side; “from one part” 
flūmine Rhēnō: abl. means; supply the verb 
“continetur,” an example of ellipsis 
8 agrum Helvētīum: Helvetic land 
alterā ex parte: on another side; see line 7 
monte fūrā: by Iura range; add “continetur” 
9 tertiā (ex parte): parallel with line 7 and 8 
lacū Lemannō: abl. means, add “continetur” 
10 hīs rēbus: because of…; abl. of cause 
fiēbat ut: it happened that…; fiō governs ut 
+ impf. subjunctive (noun result clause); the 
subjunctives are impf. in secondary sequence 
because the main verb is impf. 
11 vagārentur, possent: impf. subj. vagor and 
possum; in result clauses these are translated 
as normal impf. indicatives; vagor is deponent 
minus: comparative advverb; minor, minus 
11 facile: easily; irreg. adverb from facilis, facile 
finītīmis: on neighbors; dat. of compound 
verb (the infinitive inferre) 
quā ex parte: for which reason; “from which 
respect” 
12 bellandī: of waging war; gerund, gen. sg. with 
the adj. cupidī which in turn modifies hominēs 
Prō…prō: because of… “in proportion to” or 
“according to;,” prō is causal in force 
13 sē habēre: that they had; ind. discourse in 
secondary sequence: angustōs finēs is acc. d.o. 
14 milia passuum: miles; “thousands of paces,” a 
mile is 1000 steps; subject of patēbant 
16 adductī…permōtī: Helvetians influenced… 
and moved; the participles are nom. pl. 
agreeing with a missing subject 
ea quae: those (things) which; ea is object of 
comparāre and is translated as a demonstrative 
aea quae…pertinērent: those (things) which 
pertain/would pertain; a relative clause of 
characteristic clarifies what sort of thing the 
antecedent is (i.e. ea) and can be translated 
here with or without modal “would” 
ad proficiscendum: for setting out; gerund 
(verbal noun) + ad expresses purpose 
comparāre, coemere, facere, confīrmāre: 
complementary infinitives with cōnstituērunt, 
supply the missing conjunction “et” 
18 quam maximum: as great…as possible; quam 
+ superlative is frequently translated “as X as 
possible,” here it modifies numerum 
quam maxīmās: see above, with sementēs 
ut…suppeteret: so that… might suffice; ut + 
impf. subj., purpose clause in secondary seq. 
ad…confīniendās: for accomplishing…; “for 
those things going to be accomplished” ad + 
ergundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often 
expresses purpose; when translating, employ a 
ergund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund 
eās rēs as the object of the gerund 
biennium…esse: that…; ind. discourse 
sibi: for themselves; dat. of interest/advantage 
21 in…annum: into the…; i.e. “during,” 58 BC

Translating Subjunctives

With the exception of purpose clauses (may, might), conditional sentences (if should, would; if were, 
would; if had, would have), and some relative clauses of characteristic (would), almost all the 
subjunctive constructions that readers will encounter do not require a special translation in English. 
Readers should simply identify the tense and translate the subjunctive as one would an indicative. 
Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are the most common tenses in secondary sequence.
3.3 Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātionem ad civitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Cāstīcō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquānō, cuius pater rēgnun in Sēquāniōs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicīs appellātus erat, ut rēgnun in civitātē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; 4. itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, fratrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in civitātē obtinēbat ac maximē plebī acceptus erat, ut idem cónārētur persuādet eīque filiām suam in matrimōnium dat. 5. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cónāta perficere, propterēa quod ipse suae civitātīs imperium obtentūrus esset: 6. nōn esse dūbium quin tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvetīi possent; sē suīs copiīs suōque exercitū illīs regna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidēm et iusiūrandum dant et regnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse sperant.

4.1 Ea rēs est Helvētīi per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgėrunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur.

2. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iudiciūm omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgīt, et omnēs clientēs obaeratōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dicerēt sē ēripuit. 3. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cónārētur multitūdinēmque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; 4. neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvetīi arbitrantur, quin ipse sībī mortem conscīverit.
Orgetorix’s Conspiracy Fails

1 ad...conficiendās: for accomplishing...; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and ēas rēs as the object of the gerund

2 eō: this; demonstrative pronoun

3 cuius: whose; gen. sg. relative pronoun

4 appellātus erat: had been named; + predicate nominative; the verb behaves as a linking verb

5 quod...habuerit: which...had...; pf. subj., relative clause of characteristic

6 eō tempore: at...; abl. of time when

7 ut...cōnārētur: that...; ind. command governed by persuādet; impf. deponent cōnōr

8 perfacile...esse...perficere: that it is very easy to...; ind. disc. governed by probat; perficere is inf. subject and perficere is the pred. adj.

9 propterē quod: because; lit. “on this account because” which is a pleonasm (redundancy) ipse: (he) himself; i.e. Orgetorix

10 quīn...plūrimum possent: that...he would have very much power; a common idiom; quīn + subj. following a verb of doubt or hindering

11 conciliātūrum (esse): that they will win over; fut. infinitive; ind. disc., sē is acc. subj.

12 lis-iurandum: a sworn oath; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive iūrō, -âre

13 tōfūs: of the entire; gen. sg. with Galliāe

14 Ea rēs: this matter; i.e. Orgetorix’s conspiracy est...ēnūntiāta: ēnūntiāta est; pf. passive

15 causam dicere: to plead the case; idiom

16 damnātum...sequi: that (he) if condemned follow...; deponent inf., PPP is conditional

17 deī cōnstitūtā: on the...; abl. of time when

18 coēgit: gathered; cōgō (co-agō) means (a) compel or (b) drive together; cf. ll. 15 and 22

19 eōdēm: in the same (place); abl. place where

20 nē...diceret: so that...not; neg. purpose. cf. 15

21 mortuus est: died; pf. deponent, morior

22 cum...cōnārētur...cōgerent: after...; cum clause with two impf. subjunctives

23 quīn sībi...conscīverit: that he brought...on himself; quīn + pf. subj. consciscō, after a verb of doubting or hindering; cf. line 9 above
5.1 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exeat. 2. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; 3. frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum rediētōnīs spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perācula subeunda essent; trium mensum molīta cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Raucācis et Tulingēs et Latobriģēs finitīmītus utī, eōdem usī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur, Boiōisque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transīerant Noreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6.1 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; 2. alterum per provinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterēa quod inter flīnis Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnullīs locīs vadī trānsītur.

1 eius: his; i.e. Orgetorix, gen. sg.
nihiló minus: no less; “less by nothing,” comp. adverb; nihilō is abl. degree of difference
id quod: that which; id is object of facere
2 ut…excant: (namely) that…; pres. subj. eexcō, in a noun purpose clause in apposition to id
ad eam rem: for this matter; expresses purpose
sē: that they; acc. subject of paraēsē esse
3 arbitrātī sunt: pf. deponent
numerō: in number; abl. of respect
ad: around; “up to” or “nearly”
5 præter quod: except (that) which…
sēcum: cum sē
portātūrī erant: were going to carry;
periphrastic fut. (fut. act. pple + impf. sum)
ut…essent: so that…; result, impf. sum
spē sublātā: with hope having been carried off;
abl. absolute, pf. pass. pple from tollō
6 ad…subeundā: for approaching…; “for all dangers going to be approached,” a gerundive subēo + ad expresses purpose and is best translated through a gerund-gerundive flip as a gerund + object: “for approaching all dangers”
molitā: ground; i.e flour, PPP “set in motion”
8 uti…proficiscantur: that…; an alternative spelling for ut (note: the pres. inf. for ētōr is ētī with an initial long-u); introducing an ind. command with pres. subj.
ūstī: having employed; nom. pl. PPP, deponent ētōr governs an ablative object
ūnā: altogether; adverb formed from an abl.
10 trānsērēnt: pluperfect of trānsēō
sōcīōs: (as) allies; in apposition to Boüisque
12 erant: there were

molō, -erc, molū, molitū: grind (in a mill), mill, 1
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 4
nondum: not yet, 3
nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2
Noreia, -ae f.: Noreia, 1
Noricum, -i m.: Noricum (modern Austria) 1
nūper: recently, lately, newly, 1
omninō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2
oppidum, -i n.: town, 4
pācātus, -a, -um: peaceful, quiet, 2
parō (1): prepare, make ready, 3
patiōr, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 2
perpaucā, -ae, -a: very few, 1
Pīsō, Pīsōnis m.: Piso, 2
pons, pontis m.: a bridge, 2
portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 2
præter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2
prōptereā: on this account, therefore, 4
quadringenti: four hundred, 2
Raurācē, -ōrum: Rauraci, 1
reditū, -ōnis f.: return, going back, 1
ripa, -ae f.: bank, shore, 1
sociōs, -i m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2
subēo, -ire, -i, -itum: approach, undergo, 1
tollō, -ere, sustūlī, sublātum: destroy, raise, 2
trans: over, across (+ acc.), 3
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 1
ubi: where, when, 4
vadum, -i n.: shallow, shoal, ford, 2
vel: or, vel…vel, either…or, 2
vīcus, -i m.: village, neighborhood, district, 2
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2

14 quā: by which (way); or “where,” abl. as adv.
quā…dūcerunt: relative clause of characteristic with impf. subjunctive, the path is so narrow that carts must pass one at a time
15 ut…possent: so that; result clause, impf. subj.
facile: easily; irregular 3rd decl. adv. facilis, -e
alterum (īter): the other (route); in apposition to itinerā
21 bonō animō: seemed not yet of good will to…;
abl. of quality in the predicative position
22 vī: irregular ablative of means, vī
paterentur: they (Allobrogēs) allow; impf. subj. of the deponent patiōr (3rd-io)
23 diem dicunt quā die: they name the day on which (day),…; ablative time when
24 a(nte) d(īem) V. Kal(ends) Apr(īlis): 5th day before the Kalends of April; March 28th, 58
L. Pisēne…cōnsulībus: abl. abs; add “being”
7.1 Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximās potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 2. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Gallīā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī. 3. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīī certiōrēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt nobilīssimōs civitātīs, cuīus legātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloētiōn princēpem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficīō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius volūntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memorīā tenēbat L. Cassium consulem occīsūm exercitumque eius ab Helvētīī pulsum et sub iugum missum, cōncēdendum nōn putābat; 4. neque hōminēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per provinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficīō existimābant. 5. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere possent dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīōs respondit diem se ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverenterur.

April, Aprilīs m.: April, 2
Cassius, -i m.: Cassius, 1
concēdō, -ere: go away, withdraw, yield, 2
cōnsūl, -is m.: consul, 3
contendō, -ere, -i, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4
dēliberō (1): consider, consult, weigh, 1
Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3
imperē (1): to obtain, accomplish, 3
inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4
intercedō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum: come or go between, intervene, 1
Idūs, -um f.: Ides (day of the month), 1
iugum, -i n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 2
L.: Lucius, 2
lēgātio, -onis f.: embassy, envoy, 2
maleficium, -ii n.: wrongdoing, crime, 2
matūrō (1): hasten; anticipate, ripen, 1
memoria, -ae f.: memory, 4
Nammeius, -ii m.: Nammeius, 1
nōbilis, -e: noble, renowned, 3
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 2
occidō, -ere, occidī, occīsus: kill, cut down 4
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus: drive, push, 2
pons, pontīs m.: a bridge, 2
prīnceps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
propterea: on this account, therefore, 4
putō (1): to think, imagine, 3
rescindō, -ere, scidī, scissum: cut back, 1
respondeō, -ère, -di, -dōnum: to answer, 3
revertor, -ī, reversus sum: to turn back, return, 2
rogō (1): to ask; tell, 2
spatium, -ii n.: space, room, extent, 4
sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum: take, spend, 2
temperō (1): refrain from, keep from, 1
ubi: where, when, 4
ulterior, -ius: farther, 2
urbs, urbis, f.: city, 1
Verucloētiōn, -ii m.: Verucloētiōn, 1
voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, choice, 2

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses become subjunctive, while the main verbs become infinitives. These subjunctives often do not require a special translation. Simply translate the verb in the appropriate tense and identify the subjunctive as “subordinate clause in indirect discourse.”

quod imperium obtentūrus esset because he was about to obtain the command p. 6
quod...aliud iter habērent nūllum because they had no other route p. 10
1 Caesar: to Caesar; Caesar talks about himself in the 3rd person; dat. sg. of nūntiātum esset
nūntiātum esset: plpf. pass. subjunctive in a temporal clause with cum, “after” or “when”

id...eōs...conārī: this... (namely) that they attempt; acc. subject and deponent inf. (indirect disc.) in apposition to id

2 quam...itineribus: in as rapid marches as possible; “with the greatest marches as it is possible,” quam + superlative is “as X as possible,” potest is impersonal: “it is possible”

3 Gallia ulteriōrem: further Gaul; i.e. the Province (Transalpine Gaul) in southern France contendit: hastens

4 Prōvinciae tōtī...imperat: ordered from the entire Province...; dat. indirect object; tōtī is dat. sg. of tōtus (gen. tōtūs)

quām...numerus: as great a number of soldiers possible; “a greatest number of soldiers as it is able;” see line 2

imperat... (et) pontem...iubet: supply the missing conjunction “et,” asyndeton, which suggests that Caesar is quick and decisive

5 ad Genavam: near Geneva

rescindī: present passive infinitive

6 eius: his; i.e. Caesar’s certōrēs factī sunt: were informed; “were made more certain”, common idiom in Caesar, certōrēs is a pred. nominative

7 cuīus legātiōnis: of which embassy; rel. adj.

8 qui dicērent: who would say...; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. dicō, which one may translate as a regular purpose clause: “to say...”

sībī esse in animō: that he had in mind; + inf., “there is to him in mind,” dat. of possession

9 propterēa quod: because; lit. “on this account because,” 4th and final instance of this phrase

habērent: they had; impf. subj., subordinate clauses within indirect discourse govern verbs in the subjunctive

rogāre ut...liceat: they asked that it be allowed...; historical inf. and ind. command

eius voluntāte: with his permission

10 memoriā tenēbat: in memory; abl. of means, a common idiom for “he recalled” or “he remembered”

L. Cassium...occīsum (esse), exercitumque...pulsum (esse)...missum (esse): two separate instances of indirect discourses (two acc. subjects) governed by tenēbat, supply esse to form pf. passive infinitives

11 occīsum (esse): had been killed; pf. pass. inf.

pulsum (esse): pf. pass. inf. pullo

sub iugum missum (esse): had been sent under the yoke; i.e. had been enslaved

12 concedendum nōn (esse sībi): that he must not yield; “that it is not going to be yielded by him,” a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) which expresses obligation or necessity, often with a dative of agent

hominēs...temperātūrōs (esse): that people...would not refrain; fut. inf. governed by existimābat

inimīcō animō: of hostile intent; abl. of description modifying hominēs
datā facultāte: ablative absolute

13 itineris faciēndī: of making a journey; “of a journey going to be made” gerundive modifies gen. iter which is better translated through a gerundive-gerund flip

ab inūriā...maleficiō: from...; abl. separation with temperātūrōs (esse)

14 ut spatium...possēt: so that...; purpose clause with impf. subj.; spatium is subject

15 sē...sūmptūrōm (esse): that he... indirect discourse, supply esse for the future inf.

ad deliberandum: for deliberating; ad + gerund expressing purpose, which can also be translated as an infinitive: “to deliberate”

16 quid: anything; aliquid, aliquidis is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quid)

sī...vellent,...reverterentur: if they should wish, they could return...; in direct disc. a future less vivid condition (sī pres. subj., pres. subj.) which are placed in impf. subjunctive in indirect discourse in secondary sequence

ad Id(us) April(is): near the Ides of April; the 13th of April, the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon; Idūs is 4th decl. acc. pl. and Aprilis is gen. sg.

---

Numbers of Helvetians Killed During Caesar’s Campaign

In I.29 Caesar claims that 368,000 Helvetians and allies left Helvetia (only 92,000 were able to bear arms) and 110,000 returned. Therefore, 258,000 either fled or perished at Caesar’s hand.
24.1 At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et ēssedariīs, quō plērumque genere in proelīs ūtī consuērunt, reliquiīs copiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. 2. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod navēs propter magnūtim nēs in altō cōnstitūī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītūs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, 3. cum illī aut ex ēridō aut paulum in aquam progressī omnibus membrīs expeditūs, nōtissimīs locīs, audacter tēla coicerent et equōs insuefactōs incitārent. 4. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī, nōn eādem alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestalibus ūtī proelīs consuerant utēbantur.

25.1 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et motus ad usum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmis incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium constitūī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs propellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō usuī nostrīs fuit. 2. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī constitērunt ac paulum modo pedem retulērunt.

alacritās, -tātis f.: eagerness, ardor, 1
aperīō, -īre, -īū, -īertus: open, disclose, 3
aqua, -ae f.: water, 1
aridus, -a, -um: dry, 3
audacter: boldly, 1
consistō, -ERE, -stītī: to stand (still), stop 2
dēsilīo, -īre: to jump down, disembark, 4
difficultās, -tātis f.: trouble, difficulty, 1
equus, -ī m.: horse, 4
ēssedarius, -ī m.: charioteer, driver, 1
expeditūs, -ī, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4
figūra, -ae f.: form, shape, figure, 1
fluctus, -īs m.: wave, billow, 2
fundā, ae f.: sling, 3
ignōtus, -ā, -um: unknown; obscure 1
imperītus, -a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
impetītus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3
inde: from there, then, afterward, 3
insuefactus, -a, -um: accustomed, inured, 1
insētātus, -a, -um: unusual, uncommon, 2
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 3
membrum, -ī n.: limb, member, 1
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4
mōtus, -ūs m.: motion, 3
nōtus, -ā, -um: known, familiar, famous, 2
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2
onerārius, -ā, -um: freight (ship); 2
onus, oneris n.: burden, load, freight, 1
opprimō, -ERE, -pressī, -pressum: burden, overwhelm, 3
pedester, -TRIS, -TRE: on foot, infantry, 1
perterreō, -ERE, -terrī: terrify thoroughly, 1
praeomitō, -ERE: send forward, send ahead, 2
prōgedior, -grediō, -gressus: step forward, go forth, advance, 2
prōpellō, -ERE, -PELLI, -PULSUM: drive forward or push away, 3
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report bring back 3
removeō, -ERE, -MÖVI, -MÔTUS: remove, 2
remus, ī m.: oar, 2
sagittā, -ae f.: arrow, 1
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
species, -ī f.: sight, appearance, aspect, 1
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
submoveō, -ERE, -MÖVI: move up; remove, 1
torrentum, -ī n.: missile-launcher, 3
ubi: where, when, 4
Background to Caesar’s First Invasion of Britain on August 26, 55 BC

In IV.20 Caesar says that, although the winters were early (matūrae) in the north, he decided to go to Britain because he realized that assistance had been supplied from there (inde subministrāta auxilia) for the Gauls in almost every battle. Since Caesar knew very little about the region—its size (magnitudō), inhabitants (quantae nātiōnes), its practices in war (āsum bellī), or its suitable ports (idōneī portūs)—he sent Gaius Volusenus in IV.21 as a scout to gather this information.

In the meantime, several states (civitātēs) of the Britons learned about his plan, sought out Caesar, and offered hostages as a show of loyalty. Caesar sent Commius, a loyal Gaul whom Caesar had placed as leader of the Atrebates and who had clout (auctorītās) over Gauls, back with the Britons. On the fifth day, Volusenus returned and reported what he had seen. In IV.22 after accepting hostages from the Gauls, Caesar placed the legates Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta in charge of Roman forces in Gaul. Then he departed with 2 Legions and about 80 transport ships.

In IV.23 Caesar set sail after midnight (tertīā ferē vigiliā) and around 10 a.m. (hūrā diēī quàrtā) arrived in Britain. The Romans found themselves facing the sheer cliffs of Dover, and on top of all of the hills armed troops (copiās armātās) openly stood. Caesar now informed his legates about what Volusenus reported and sailed 7 miles up the coast to an open beach (apertō ac plānō litorē).
25.3 Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī X legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī feliciter ēvenīret, ‘Dēsilite,’ inquit, ‘militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certe meum rēi públicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.’

4. Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. 5. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, universī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. 6. Hōs item ex proximīs primī nāvibus cum conspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26.1 Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmēr insisterne neque signa subsequi poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbaēbantur; 2. hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, 3. plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in universōs tēla coniciēbant.

4. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria navīgia militibus complēri iussit et, quōs laborantēs conspēxerat, ĕs subsidia submittēbant. 5. Nostrī, simul in āridō constītērunt, suīs omnibus consecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fūgam dedērunt; neque longius prosequī potērunt, quod equītēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere non poterant. Hoc ūnum ad pristĭnam fortūnam Caesarī definit.
prosequor, sequī, secūtum: follow, pursue 1
quícumque, quae-, qued-, whosoever, 4
scapha, -ae f.: skiff, small boat, 1
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 2
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
singulāris, -ē: single, 2
speculātōrius, -a, um: of a look-out/scout, 1
submittō, -ere, -mīsī: send up, 1
ubī: where, when, 4
ūniversus, -a, -um: all together, whole, 3
vadum, -i n.: shallow, shoal, ford, 2
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3
vōx, vōcīs, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4

1 nostrīs…cunctantibus: abl. abs., pres. pple
2 quī…ferēbat: (the one) who…; i.e. the
standard bearer, subject of inquit
contestātus…ut: having implored the gods…
that…; ut + impf. subjunctive in indirect command
3 dēsilīte: plural imperative
militēs: vocative direct address
vultīs: 2nd pl. pres. volō
aquilam: the eagle (standard); the golden eagle
on the staff that represents the 10th legion. The
behavior toward the military standard is similar
to the loyalty shown to the American flag.
4 meum…officium præstiterō: I will have
performed my duty to; + dat. compound, fut. pf.
5 cum…dixisset: when he had…; cum is an
adverbial conjunction not a preposition
vōce magnā: with…; abl. of manner is often
without “cum” when the object is modified by
an adjective, here magnā
sē: himself; standard-bearer is the subject
ex nāvī: ablative, i-stem 3rd declension
6 ferre: infinitive ferō
nostri: our (men); nom. subject
conhortāti: pf. dep. pple cohortor
inter sē: one another; “among themselves”
nē…admitterētur: that… not; negative ind.
command, impf. subj. in secondary sequence
7 Hōs…consipēsissent: when (the other soldiers)
had caught sight of (them); plpf. subjunctive
8 subsecutī: having followed behind; pf dep pple
pugnātum est: each (side) fought; “it was
fought,” impersonal pf. pass.
9 nostri: our (men)
10 ordinēs servāre: to maintain their ranks
subsequī: to follow behind; deponent inf.
alius alīā ex nāvī: one from one ship…

another from another ship; common meaning
with two uses of alius, -a, -um
11 quibuscumque signīs: dat. of compound verb
12 vērō: but indeed, but to be sure; vērō is in an
adversative clause; placed second in the
sentence but first in English, it draws out a
contrast between the Romans and the Britons
nōtīs…vādis: ablative abs.
13 ęgredientēs: pres. act. pple
14 plūrēs paucōs: More (Britons)…few
(Romans); juxtaposition, which heightens the
contrast; plūrēs is nom. subj. of plūs
aliī: (and) others…; asyndeton
16 quōd: this; “which,” acc. obj. animadvertisset
nāvium: i-stem gen. plural nāvis

Supine
A supine is a verbal noun formed by adding -ū in ablative and -um in accusative to the 4th principle part stem. It is often translated as an ablative of respect (specification) and accusative expressing purpose:

factū: in doing (to do) (p. 6, 20)
frūmentātūm: to get grain (p. 20)
oppugnātūm: to assault (p. 39)
rogātūm: to ask (p. 52)
nocītūm: to be harmed (p. 52)
27.1 Hostēs proeliiō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pace mīsērunt; obsidēs dapeutōs quaeque imperāsset sēsē factūrōs pollicitī sunt. 2. Ųnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrēbās vēnit, quem suprā demonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam præmissum. 3. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōratōris mōdō Caesaris mandāta deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coiēcerant; 4. tum proeliiō factō remīsērunt. In petēndā pace eius rēi culpam in multitūdinem coiēcerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt.

5. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pacem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere <sē> imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; 6. quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūtōs dīxērunt. 7. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenēre et sē civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepeērunt.

28.1 Hīs rēbus pāce confīrmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā demonstrātum est, quae equītēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. 2. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coārta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est prōpius sōlis occāsum, magnō suī cum periculō deceīrentur; 3. quae tamen, ancorīs iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem petīrērunt.

adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
ancora, -ae f.: anchor, 3
appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat.), 3
accessō, -ere, -iō, itum: summon, send for, 1
Atrebās, Atrebātīs, m.: Atrebates, 3
cœpiē, cœpissee, cœpētum: to begin, 9
commendō (1): to commit, entrust, 1
Commīius, -ī m.: Commius, 2
complēō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize; arrest; grasp 4
cōrōrō, -irō, cōrutēs: arise, break out, 2
culpā, -ae f.: blame, fault; cause, 1
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3
dēciōrī, -ere, -īēci, -iectum: cast down 2
fluctus, -ūs m.: wave, billow, 2
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3
iaclō, iacere, ēciēci, iactum: to throw, 4
ignocō, -ere, novī, nōtum: pardon, forgive 2
imprudentia, -ae, f.: lack of foresight, 2
infernus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3
insula, -ae, f.: island, 2
interēā: meanwhile, meantime, 3
leinis, -e: smooth, slippery, 1
longinquis, -a, -um: far; distant, remote, 2
mandō (1): order, command, commit, 2
modus, i n.: manner, form; measure, 4
necessāriōs, -a, -um: necessary, inevitable, 1
occāsūs, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2
ōrātor, -oris, m.: speaker, pleader, 1
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4
pollicerō, -ērī, -ēcītus: promise, offer, 2
portūs, -ūs m.: harbor, port, haven, 1
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2
prīnceps, -cīpis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
prōpiros: more closely, nearer, 3
prōvehē, -ere, -vexī, vectum: carry forth, 1
quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2
querōr, querēri, questum: complain, lament, 1
referō, ferre, tuli, lātum: report bring back 3
remigrō (1): to travel back, wander back, 1
remittō, -ere, -mīsī: send back, let go, relax, 4
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
Lesson 8: Caesar IV.27

The Britons Seek Peace, and the Roman Cavalry is Delayed

1 proeliiō: in battle; abl of respect or place where simul atque: as soon as... sē...reccepērunt: they recovered; “retreated”

2 dē: about
obsidēs: acc. d.o. of datūrōs (esse)
sēsē: that they would; reflexive as acc. subject of fut. infinitives datūrōs (esse) and factūrōs (esse) in secondary sequence quaque imperāsset: and (the things) which he had ordered; imperā(vi)set is a syncopated plpf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is obj. of factūrōs (esse) polliticīt sunt: perfect deponent policcor ūnā: altogether, together; ablative as adverb

3 quem: whom...; acc. subject of pf. passive inf. praemissum (esse) in ind. discourse with by demonstrāveram

4 suprā demonstrāveram: I had shown above; i.e. earlier in the narrative illī: those (Britons); subject of comprehenderant

5 orātōris mōdō: in the manner of a public speaker; ablative of manner

6 mandāta: the orders; “things ordered” acc. d.o. deferret: Commius carried; impf. subj. deferō coīcērunt: plpf. co(n)iciō, -ere proelīō factō: abl. absolute

7 in petendā pace: in seeking peace; “in peace going to be sought,” gerund-gerundive flip in which pace becomes acc. obj. of the gerund eīus rērē: for this matter; gen. of charge coīcērunt: pf. co(n)iciō, -ere

8 ut ignōscērētur: impf. subj., ind. command

9 questus quod: having complained that...had waged; intulisset is plpf. subj. for alleged cause cum: after in continentem: to the continent; i.e. continent of Europe, governed by missīs petissent: they had sought; plpf. subjunctive ab sē: from him; i.e. from Caesar, reflexive

8 intulissent: plpf. subj. inferō, alleged cause

10 ignōscere <sē>: that he pardons; + dat. obj.

11 quōrum...partem...partem: part of which...another) part...; partitive gen.

12 arcessitam: summoned; modifies partem paucēs diēbus: within...; abl. time within sēsē: that they...; emphatic reflexive, acc. subject of fut. inf. datūrōs (esse) in indirect discourse

13 suōs: their own (men); object of iussērunt in agrōs: to their fields, to their farms

15 Hīs rēbus: abl. of means of cause Pāce confirmātā: abl. absolute post diēm quartum quam...ventum during the fourth day after they came to Britain; “the fourth day later than it was come into Britain,” postquam as one word can be translated “after;” ventum est is an impersonal pf. passive which we translate in the active nāvēs XVIII: subject of solvērunt

16 suprā demonstrātūm est: it has been revealed above; i.e. earlier in the narrative quae...sustulerant: which had brought...; modifies fem. pl. nāvēs, plpf. sufferō

17 ex superiōre portū: from the upper harbor lēnī: abl. sg. i-stem 3rd decl. adj. with ventō, the wind was not strong, so the ships holding the cavalry arrived later than the ships that had already come ashore solvērunt: set sail; “loosened” quae cum: when these (ships)...; “when which (ships),” we prefer a demonstrative here where Caesar uses a relative pronoun Britānniae: to Britain; dat. of compound verb

19 coōrta est: deponent perfect, coōrior ut...possēt: that...was able; result clause nūlla ēārum: the antecedents of the adj. and pronoun are the nāvēs (feminine, plural) aliae...aliae: some (ships) others eōdem: to the same place; adverb erant profectae: plpf. deponent proficiscor

20 proprius: nearer to + acc.

21 magnō sui periculō: with great risk for them quae tamen: these (ships) however; “which” cum...complerētur: when...; cum is adverbial not a preposition; flūctibus is abl. means necessāriō: necessarily; abl. as adverb adversā nocte: in the face of the coming night

24 provectae: PPP prōvehō
29.1 Eadem nocte accidit ut esset luna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere consuēvit, nostrīisque id erat incognītum. 2. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curāverat, quāisque in aridum subdüxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant deligātae, tempestās afflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.


30.1 Quibus rébus cognītīs, principēs Britānniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarėm convēnerant, inter sē collocutī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frumentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellegērent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.
1 Eādem nocte on...; abl. of time when accidit ut: it happened that...; noun result clause commonly follows impersonal accidit esset: there was; impf. subj. sum qui dīēs: which time...; “which day,” rel. adj. aēstūs maximōs: calculated to be August 30, 55 BC thus dating the entire expedition 2 nostrīs: to our (men); dat. of interest 3 ūnō tempore: abl. of time when et longās nāvēs...et onerāriās (nāvēs): both the long ships and the freight (ships) quibus: abl. of means, relative pronoun transportandum (esse): that...was to be transported; “was going to be transported” passive periphrastic (gerundive + missing inf. of sum) express obligation or necessity; exemur is acc. subject of this infinitive in indirect discourse 4 subdūxerat: drew up; as a prefix sub- often means “up from under” or just “up” 5 nostrīs: to our (men); dat. of indirect object 6 administrāndī aut auxiliandī: gen. sg. gerunds (verbal nouns), translate in English with –ing, modifying the subject facultās 7 complūribus...fractīs: abl. absolute reliquae cum essent...inutilīs: since the remaining (ships) were...; causal; impf. subj. 8 ad navigandum: for...; ad + gerund expresses purpose, here qualifying inutilīs 7 magna: modifies fem. sg. perturbātio below id quōd: that which...; apposition to perturbātiō 9 tōtius exercitūs: subjective gen. sg. 10 possent: they might be able; impf. subj. in a relative clause of purpose dēerant: impf. dēsum ad reficiendās nāvēs: for repairing...; ad + noun + gerundive expressing purpose; employ a gerund-gerundive flip in the translation 11 erant usūi: were of use; dative of purpose constābat: it was agreed to all to...; “stood fixed” + oportere, Caesar had planned to spend the winter in Gaul, so he brought insufficient amount of grain to Britain 12 in hiemem: (well) into the winter 13 quibus rēbus: these things...; abl. abs. inter sē: to one another; “among themselves” Rōmānīs dēesse: were falling short for the Romans; dat. of interest, inf. dēsum 16 quae...erant angustiora: which was...; neut. pl. castra is the antecedent hōc...quōd: because of this...(namely) because,” abl. of cause

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Popular Uses of Subjunctive in Caesar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>How to identify</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose, adverbial or relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result, adverbial or noun clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum-Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Clause of Characteristic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future-Less-Vivid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Contrafactual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Contrafactual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30.2. optimum factū esse dūxérunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem producere, quod ēs superātīs aut reditū interclusīs nēminem postea bellī inferendi causā in Britanniam transitūrum cōnfidēbant. 3. Itaque rursus coniurātiōne factā paulātīm ex castrīs discedere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coeptūrant.

31.1 At Caesar, etsī nōndum cōrūm cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex cō quod obsidēs dare intermīserant fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. 2. Itaque ad omnēs casūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra conferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, cārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant usuī ex continentī comportārī iūbēbat. 3. Itaque, cum summō studios a mīlitibus administrāretur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut navigārī satīs commodē posset effēcīt.

32.1 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetūdine ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII., neque ēllā ad id tempus bellī suspicīōne interpōsitā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ēī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statīōne erant Cesārī nuntiāvērunt pulvere maiōrem quam consuetūdō ferret in ēa parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

adflictō (1): damage, agitate, knock about, 1
administrō (1): to manage, direct; help, 3
aes, aeris n.: bronze, copper, 2
āmitō, -ere, -misī, -missum: lose, let go, 2
clam: secretly, in secret, 1
cœpi, cœpisse, cœpsum: to begin, 9
commeātus, -ūs m.: convoy, traffic, trip, 1
commodus, -a, -um: convenient, suitable, 2
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3
conferō, -ferre: bring together, gather, 1
confidō, -ere, confīsus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
coniūrātio, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
conlocō (1): place, settle, arrange, 1
cotidiē: daily, every day, 1
dēducō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3
ēventus, -ūs m.: outcome, consequence, result, 2
factū: to do (supine), 2
frūmentor, -ārī: to forage, fetch corn, 1
hiems, hiemis f.: winter, storm, 4
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum: close off, 1
interpōnō, -ere, -posuī: include, introduce, 2
materia, -ae f.: timber, wood, material, 2
nāvigō (1): to sail, 2
nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, -em, nūllō: no one, 3
nondum: not yet, 3
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 2
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 1
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
paullātim: gradually, little by little, 3
porta, -ae f.: gate, entrance, 1
postēa: thereafter, afterwards, 1
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4
prōducō, -ere, -duxū, ductum: lead forth, 2
pulvis, pulvis m.: dust, dirt, 1
rebellio, -līōnis f.: revolt, renewal of war, 1
reditus, -ūs m.: a return, a coming back, 1
reficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum: restore, repair, 2
remaneō, ēre, mansī, mansum: remain, 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
satis: enough, sufficient, 2
statio, stātiōnis f.: post, station, anchorage, 3
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
suspicio, -ciónis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
suspicōr, -ārī, suspicātum: to suspect, 3
transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3
ventītō (1): to come often, resort to, 2
Gerundives

A gerundive, a future passive participle (stem + ad + 1st & 2nd decl. endings) agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Though it can be translated many ways: "going/about/worthy to be freed" or "to be freed," we often employ a gerund-gerund flip and translate the verb form as a gerund with an acc. object

reliquās (nāvēs): the rest of the ships

quae...usuī: the (things) which were of use...; usuī is dative of purpose, cf. 29.4

ad eās rēs: for...; ad + acc expressing purpose

continenti: 3rd declension i-stem abl. sg.

summō studiō: abl. of manner with adjective does not require "cum;" this cum begins a causal cum-clause (since) with administrārētur

administrārētur: it was managed; impf. subj.

reliquīs ut...effēcit: he brought it about that that the remaining ships were able to be sailed conveniently enough; a noun result clause after effēcit, "brought it about"

ex consuetūdine: according to custom; abl. of source; the adj. ānā modifies legiōne

frumentātum: to get grain; supine, acc. usually expresses purpose

VII: the 7th (legion); predicate nominative

ūlā...suspicīōne interpōsitā: abl. absolute

cum pars hominum...pars: while some of the men... (and) others...; asyndeton

ventitāret: kept coming; impf. subj. with cum, frequentative form of venīō

eī qui...: those who...

pulverem...vidērī: that...; indirect discourse, pulverem is acc. subj.
pulverem maiōrem quam: more dust than...; comparative

consuetūdō ferret: custom bore out; i.e. usual

in eā parte: in that direction

quam in partem: into which direction; in quam partem

fēcisset: plpf. subj., relative cl. of characteristic

Lesson 10: Caesar IV.30.2

1 optimum esse: that it was best; ind. discourse, the subject is prohibēre and prodūcere

factū: in fact; supine (verbal noun); abl. respect

dūxērunt: they considered; "they calculated"

rebellīōne factū: abl. absolute

frumentō commeātūque: from...; abl. of separation governed prohibēre

2 nostrōs our (men)

prodūcere to prolong, to draw out

eīs...interclusīs: abl. absolute; eīs = ĕs

redītū: from a return; abl. separation

3 nēminem: no one; acc. subject from nēmō

bellī inferendī causā: for the sake of waging...;

causā behaves as a preposition with a preceding gen.; here a gerundive which we translate with the gerundive-gerund flip

transītūrum (esse): fut. inf. transeō with acc. subject nēminem

5 suōs: their (men); i.e. the Britons, obj. of dēdūcere

6 et...et: both...and;

7 ex eō quod: from the fact that; “from this (fact) because,” eō is a demonstrative

dare intermisērant: had ceased to give...

fore...accidit: that it would be that which happened; ind. discourse, fore is equivalent to futūrum esse, the fut. inf. of sum, governed by suspicābātur

8 ad omnēs casūs: for...; expressing purpose

et...et: both...and;

9 quae...nāvēs, ēarum...aere: the timber and bronze of those (ships), which ships...; the relative clause precedes the antecedent ēarum, materiā atque aere are abl. object of impf. ūtōr

10 ad...refiorldās: for...; ad + gerundive again expressing purpose, readers should employ the gerundive-gerund flip, and translate the verb form as a gerund with an acc. object
Lesson 11: Caesar IV.32.2 – IV.33

32.2 Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid nōvī ā barbarīs iūtum consiliī, cohortēs quae in stātiōne erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscēti, ex reliquiās duās in stātiōnem succēdēre, reliquiās armārī et confestim sēsē subsequī iussit. 3. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrī sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla coīcī animadvertit. 4. Nam quod omnī ex reliquiās partibus demessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs delīterant; 5. tum dispersōs depōsītīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquiōs incertīs ordiniūs perturbāvērent, simul equitātū atque ēssedīs circumedereant.

33.1 Genus hoc est ex ēssedīs pungae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequant et tēla coīcīunt atque ipsī terrōre equōrum et strepītū rotārum ordīnēs plērumque perturbant et, cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt, ex ēssedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 2. Aurigae interim paulātīm ex proelīō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitudine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. 3. Ita mobilitātem equitūm, stabilitātem pedīm in proelīōs praestant, ac tantum ūsī cotidiānō et exercitātīōne efficīunt utī in declīvī ac praeceptī lōcō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per temōnem percurrēre et in iugō insistere et sē ēnde in currūs citissimē recipere consuerint.

adorīō, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4
armō (1): to arm, 1
aurīga, ae m.: charioteer, driver, 1
brevis, -e: short, 3
circumdō, -are, -dēdī, -dātus: surround, 1
citus, -a, -um: swift, quick, 1
confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
cōnfēstim: immediately, 4
conlocō (1): place, settle, arrange, 1
cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3
currūs, -ūs m.: chariot, cart, 2
dēclīvis, -e: sloping, inclined downwards, 1
dēlētēscō, -ere, -tūi: conceal oneself, lie hid 1
dēmētō, -ere, messūs, messum: reap, mow 1
dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: put down, 1
dēsilīō, -ire, -luī: to jump down, dismount, 4
dispergō, -ere, -spersī, spersum: scatter, 1
equus, -i m.: horse, 4
ēssedum, -i n.: war-chariot (Gallic word), 3
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
exercitātio, -ōnīs f.: training, practice, 2
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4
flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum: turn, bend, 1
hūc: to this place, hither, here 2
incertus, -a, -um: unreliable, doubtful, 2
inde: from there, then, afterward, 3
īneō, -īre, īi, -ītum: go into, enter, 1
insinuō (1): to insinuate, wind a way in, 1
insistō, -ere, -stūi: set on, set about; stop, 2
iugum, -i n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 2
metō, ere, messūs, messum: reap, harvest, 1
mobilitās, -tātis f.: mobility, 1
moderor, -ārī, -ātum: restrain, regulate, 1
nocē: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4
noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: to learn, 1
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4
paulātīm: little by little, gradually, 3
pedes, peditīs m.: foot soldier, infantry; adj. on foot, 1
percurreō, -ere, -cucurrī: run through, 1
perequitō (1): to ride (a horse) through, 1
praecēps, praecipītis adj.: headlong; steep, 1
prōcēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: proceed, 3
proelior, -ārī: to give battle, fight, 1
rota, -ae f.: wheel, 1
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
simul: at the same time (as); together, 4
stabilitas, -tātis f.: stability, firmness, 1
statio, statīonis f.: post, station, anchorage, 3
The Britons Attack the Romans (II)

...insistere et s...citissim...ū...iugur...ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in...nūs...ō...Ū...host...s...to this place, hither, here...

brevis, -e...auriga, ae m.

conloc...c...confertus, a, um...currus, -...d...equus, -...exercitē...h...ssedum, -...ē

Ita mobilit...ā...ī...ā: “to be armed”

subsequī: present deponent inf.

processisset: plpf. subjunctive

suōs: that his (soldiers); acc. subj. of pass. inf. premī, sustinēre and pass. inf. coçi in an ind.
discourse governed by animadvertit

 speaks in the 3rd decl. adj. modifying frumentō

frumentō: abl. abs., omnī is an easy recovery for

mancīs interfectīs: abl. absolute

incertīs ordinibus: in unfixed ranks

pugnae: of fighting; modifies genus

primō: at first; abl. time when

partēs: directions

Aurigae: drivers; the drivers carried soldiers to battle, waited at a safe distance, and then returned to pick up soldiers when summoned

ante ut: in such a way...that; introducing a result clause, pres. subj. in primary sequence

expeditum...receptum: an easy recovery for their (people); “an unencumbered recovery”

tantum: only; adverb

efficient uti...consuerint: they bring it about that they have become accustomed...; noun result clause, utī is another form for ut (ūtī is inf. of ūtor) and consuerint is perfect subj.

sustinerē: to restrain; “hold up”

brevi (tempore): in a short (time); time when

per temōnem...in iugō: The Britons ran out from the chariot onto the wooden pole (tēmō) attached between the two horses to the chariot. Then they stood on the harness (iugum) binding the horses together

22 sē...recipere: retreat; a common idiom, “take themselves back”

citissimē: superlative adverb

Indirect Discourse: Accusative Subject + Infinitive

In secondary sequence, translate a present infinitive as imperfect, perfect as pluperfect, and “will” as “would.”

Present Caesarem mīlitēs mittere (says) that Caesar is sending soldiers (said) that Caesar was sending soldiers

Perfect Caesarem mīlitēs mīsisse (says) that Caesar has sent* soldiers (said) that Caesar had sent soldiers

Future Caesarem mīlitēs missūrum esse (says) that Caesar will send soldiers (said) that Caesar would send soldiers

mīlitēs ā Caesar mītī (says) that the soldiers are sent by Caesar (said) that the soldiers were sent by Caesar

mīlitēs ā Caesar missōs esse (says) that the soldiers has been sent* by C. (said) that the soldiers had been sent by C.

*alternatives: sent, were sent
34.1 Quibus rēbus perturbātūs nostrīs novitatem pugnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventū hostēs constitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore recepērunt. 2. Quō factō, ad lascissendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātūs suō sē locō continuēt et brevī tempore intermissī in castra legiōnēs redūxit. 3. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs qui erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. 4. Secutae sunt continuōs complurēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrōs continērent et hostēm a pugnā prohibērunt.

5. Interim barbarīs nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militūm suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciēndae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulsīssent, demonstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celerīter magnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūisque coactā ad castra venērunt.

35.1 Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus accident fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsiō, celerītāte perīculum effugērent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrēbās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constitūt. 2. Commissī proeliō diutius nostrōrum militūm impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. 3. Quōs tantō spatiō secutū quantum cursūēt et vīribus efficicēre potuērunt, complurēs ex eīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiōs incensī sē in castra recēpērunt.

36.1 Eōdem diē légātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pace venērunt.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2
aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2
aedificium, -i n.: building, edifice, 2
alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 2
ante: before, in front of (acc); adv. before, 4
Atrebas, Atrebātīs, m.: Atrebates, 3
auxilium, -i n.: help, aid, assistance, 3
brevis, -e: short, 3
committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4
Commius, -i m.: Commius, 2
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, unceasing, 1
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3
diē: then, next, from that place, 1
dimittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus: send (away), 3
dū: a long time, long, 1
effugīō, -ere, -fuscō: flee out, escape, 1
expellō, -ere, pullō, pulsum: drive out, expel 2
incendō, -ere, -lō, -ensus: kindle, burn, 2
lacessō, -ere, -īvē: provoke, goad, irritate, 1
latē: widely, far and wide, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 3
namque: to be sure, for, 1
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus: obtain, meet, 1
novitās, -tātis f.: newness, strangeness, 1
occidō, -ere, occidī, occasus: kill, cut down 4
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4
opportūnus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful, 2
paucitās, -tātis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3
pedītātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3
pellē, -ere, pepuli, pulsum: drive, push, 2
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
praedā, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2
praedīcō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: to bring back, 3
sequor, -i, secūtus: follow, pursue, 4
spatium, -ii n.: space, room, extent, 4
tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3
tergum, -i n.: back, hide, rear, 1
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2
transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3
vertō, -ere, -sī, -rus: turn, change, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4
1 quibus rēbus: because of these things; “which things,” abl. of cause
perturbātīs nostrīs: our (men) having been set into confusion; abl. abs.
novitātē pugnāe: abl. of means with perturbātīs tempore opportunissimō: abl. of time when
2 tulit: perfect, ferō hostēs: nom. subject
3 consītērunt: stopped; “stood still” sē…recēpērunt: retreated; idiom quō factō: this having been done; “which having been done,” abl. abs.
ad…aliēnum esse tempus: that it was an unfavorable time…; ind. discourse governed by perfect deponent pple arbitrātus
ad laccessendum…committendum: for provoking…; ad + gerundives: in a gerund-gerundive flip: the gerundives should be translated as gerunds (-ing) with acc. objs.
4 suō sē locō continuēt: he held his ground; “held himself in his position”
6 quī erant…reliquī: (those) who…; the antecedent is subject of discērunt
7 secūtae sunt: pf. deponent, subject tempestātēs continuōs…diēs: for…; acc. of duration quae…continērunt…prohibērunt: which (sort) contained…; or “which would contain…” relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj.
10 suīs: to their people; dat. indirect object quanta…facultās…darētur: how great an opportunity would…; indirect question governed by demonstrāvērunt praedae faciendae: of freeing…; gerund-gerundive flip; translate the gerundive as a gerund; modifying facultās in perpetuum: forever; “into perpetuity”
11 suī liberandī: of freeing themselves; gerundive flip; modifying facultās castrīs: from…; abl. separation expulīssent: plpf. subj.
12 hīs rēbus: because of these matters; abl. cause multitūdīnī…coacētā: ablative absolute
14 idem fore: the same thing…would happen…; “same thing…would be,” ind. disc. governed by vidēbat, fore is equivalent to futūrum esse, fut. infinitive of sum, esse; superiōribus diēbus: in the days before yesterday; abl. time when ut…effugērunt: (namely) that…; noun result clause in apposition to idem
15 essent pulsī: plpf. passive subjunctive, pellō celerītātē: with speed; abl. of manner nactus: pf. deponent pple, nanciscor dē quō: concerning whom
16 dictum est: it was mentioned (by me)
17 commissō proelīō: the battle having begun; common idiom, proelium committō
18 diūtius: longer; comparative adv. diū nostrōrum mīlitum: subject gen. + impetum hostēs: nom. subject of potuērunt, pf. possum ferē: to endure
19 quōs…secūfī: having pursued these (Britons); “having pursued whom” tantō spatiō…quantō: by as great an interval as; abl of degree of difference
19 cursū et virībus: with speed and (troop) force; virībus denotes troop size; abl. manner
20 potuērunt…occīderunt: the Roman cavalry is the subject, complūrēs is the direct object omnibus…incēnsī: abl. absolute longē lātēque: far and wide
21 sē recēpērunt: retreated, “took themselves back”
22 Eōdēm diē: abl. time when

Gerunds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Navigāre est difficilī. To sail is difficult.</td>
<td>facultās navigandi</td>
<td>navigandi causā</td>
<td>navigandi for the sake of sailing</td>
<td>navigandi by sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>navigandi causā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>utilis navigandi</td>
<td>useful for sailing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ad navigandum</td>
<td>for sailing (to sail)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in navigandum</td>
<td>by sailing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in navigandum</td>
<td>in sailing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigandi</td>
<td>of sailing</td>
<td>navigandi</td>
<td>for sailing</td>
<td>navigandi by sailing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gen. navigandī of sailing Dat. navigandō for sailing Acc. navigandum sailing Abl. navigandō by sailing

an infinitive not gerund as subject gen. + causā/grātiā expresses purpose dative of purpose ad + gerund expresses purpose ablative with or without a preposition occasionally with an acc. object
In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, 1
genera sunt duo. Nam plebēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet
per sē, nullō adhibētur cōnsiliō. 2. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut
magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in
servītūtem dicant nōbilitus: in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in
servōs. 3. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum.
4. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia publica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs
interpretantur: ad hōs magnus adulēscence numerus disciplīnāe causā
concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. 5. Nam ferē dē omnibus
controversiōs publicōs privātīisque constitunt et, sī quod est admissum
facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, Ĭdem
decernunt, praemia poenāsque constituunt; 6. sī quī aut privātus aut populus
eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiiōs interdictum. Haec poena apud eōs est
gravissima. 7. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac
scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermonemque
dēfugiant, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiānt, neque hīs petentibus
ius redditur neque honōrum habentur, hēs dōre. 5. Nam ferē hōs
honōs apud eōn concurrēt, magnō interpretantur: ad hōs magnus adul
nae causā enumerōs disciplīnum. 8. Hīs autem omnibus
Druīdibus praecest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habeat auctoritātem.

Lesson 13: Caesar VI.13.1 – 13.8
1 eōrum hominum quī: of all these peoples
   who; partitive genitive
   aliquō numerō...honōre: are of some account
   and honor; abl. of description, here predicate of
   sunt
2 plēbēs: the masses; though plural, it governs a
   3rd sg. verb
   habētur: are considered (to be); “are held”
   locō: in the position...; i.e. status in life
3 per sē: by themselves; lit. “through themselves”
   adhibētur: are admitted; + dat. of compound
   cōnsiliō: council; “assembly,” dat. compound
4 cum...premuntur: when they are
   overwhelmed; cum is an adverbial conjunction
   aere aliēnō: by debt; lit. “another’s money”
   portentōrūm: of those more powerful; gen. pl.
   sēsē: themselves; emphatic form of sē
   dicant: they dedicate; 1st conj. pres., not diēī
5 sunt: (they) have; “are (to them),” supply
   dat. of possession eīs, parallel to dominīs
   in hōs: over them; “towards them,” i.e. plēbēs
   quae dominīs: which masters (have); “which
   (there are) to masters,” dat. of possession with
   missing linking verb sunt
   in servōs: over slaves; “towards slaves”
6 alterum (genus)...alterum (genus): one...the
   other; neuter in agreement with missing genus
7 illī: i.e. Druids, nom. pl.
   rēbus dīvinīs: dat. obj. of compound intersunt
   intersunt...(et) prōcūrant...(et)
   interpretantur: asyndeton, add conjunctions
9 disciplinae causā: for the sake of training
   magnō...honōre: of great honor; abl. of
   description in the predicative position after sunt
   apud ēōs: among them; i.e. among the Gauls
10 sī quod...facinus: if any crime...; aliquōs,
   aliquō is a common indefinite adjective
   (any, some), but quī, quod is commonly used
   as an indefinite (which → any, some) after sī,
   nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this
   construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num,
   and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words
   indefinite aliquō becomes just quōd)
11 facta (est): has been committed; pf. pass.
   dē hērēditāte (aut) dē finibus: asyndeton,
   supply “aut”
12 idem: likewise
   sī quī: if anyone...; quī indefinite before sī, see
   line 10 above
13 dēcrētō nōn stētī: did not abide by the
   decision; “did not stand by the (thing)
   having been decided; abl. place where; pf. stō, stāre
   sacrificīūs: from the sacrifices; abl. separation
14 apud ēōs: among them; i.e. among the Gauls
   quibus...est interdictum, hī: these for whom
   it has been prohibited; “for whom it has been
   prohibited, these...” hī is the antecedent of the
   relative clause beginning with quibus
   numerō: in the number, group; place where
15 habētur: are considered (to be); “are held
   (to be),” see line 2 above
   hīs: from these; i.e. from those placed in the
   group of the wicked; abl. of separation
   dēcēdunt (et)...dēfugiunt: asyndeton, supply
   a conjunction
   adītum: an encounter
16 nē quid incommodo: lest anything unsuitable;
   quid is indefinite following sī, nisi, num, or
   nē; incommodo is a partitive gen.
   neque...neque: neither...nor
   hīs petentibus: to these seeking; pres. pple
   petō is condition in force; dat. indirect object
17 praestō: is over (+ dat); compound verbs
   often govern a dative object

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Uses of the Dative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Indirect Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Compound Verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Agent + Pass. Periphrastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Possession + sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Interest (Advantage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Reference*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative of Special Adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Dative (purpose + interest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*for some, interest and reference are the same construction

14.1 Drūdēs ā bellō abesse cōnsūerunt neque tribūta ūna cum reliquīs pendunt; mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitātem. 2. Tantās excitāti praemīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquūsque mittuntur. 3. Magnum ibi numerum versuam ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnullī viēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. 4. Neque fās esse existimānt ea litterās mandāre, cum in reliquīs fērē rēbus, publicīs privātūsque rationibus, Graecīs litterās ūtāntur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituīsse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnām efferrī velint neque eōs, quī discunt, litterās consēcrātās minus memoriae studēre: quod fērē plērīsque accidit, ut præsidīō litterārum diligentiam in perdescendō ac memoriam remittant. 5. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem transīre ad aliōs, atque hoc maximē ad virtūtem excitāri putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praeterea dē sēderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitudine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē dōrōm immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.
Hoc mortuō: this (one) being dead; i.e. “if this one dies” abl. absolute is conditional in force, since there is no participle for sum, the subject and predicate are placed in the ablative

sī qui ex reliquis: if (anyone) who out of the rest...; missing antecedent is subj. of succēdit dignitāte: in dignity; abl. of respect, governed by excellēt not by succēdit

plūrēs: more; nom. subj., parēs is nom. pred.
nōnumquam etiam: (and) sometimes even; suffrāgiō and armīs are parallel, abl. of means

3 certō...tempore: abl. of time when
finībus: territory

4 media: center; nom. predicate, the gen. tōfōs Galliae modifies media
habētur: is considered; “is held,” quae regiō is subject, quae is a relative adjective

6 reperta (esse): to have been invented; pf. pass. inf. governed by exēstimātur
trānslāta esse: pf. pass. inf. trānsferō
diligentius: comparative adverb
plērumque: frequently
illō: to that place; adverb
descendī causā: for the sake of learning; causā governs a preceding gen.; gerund gen. sg.

9 cōnsu(e)vōrunt: are accustomed; present sense
ūnā: together; adverb

10 pendēnt: pay; “weigh out”

11 suā sponte: by their own will
12 versuum: of verses; gen. pl.
13 annōs...vīcenōs: for twenty years; duration
nōnnūllī: several; “not none”
14 fās esse: that it is right; impersonal verb in ind. discourse, mandāre is subject of esse
ea: these (things); neut. pl., i.e. these teachings
litterēs: to letters (of the alphabet); i.e. writing
cum...ūntur: although...; this cum + pres.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum: to discover, find; 1
sīdus, sīderīs n.: star; group of stars, constellation, 1
sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
studeō, -ēre, uf: be eager, strive after, 1
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up, approach, 2
suffrāgium, -iī n.: a vote, 1
terra, -ae f.: earth, ground, land, 2
trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum: to give over, hand down, 3
transferō, ferre, tūfī, lātum: carry across, 1
tribūtum, -iī n.: tribute, tax, contribution, 2
vacātiō, -tūnīs f.: exemption, immunity 1
vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsus: turn, change, 1
vīcenī, -a, -um: twenty each, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. vīrēs: force, power, violence, 4

vulgus, -iī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 2

subjunctive is concessive

id...instituisse: to have established this; i.e. not entrusting training to letters; pf. inf.
duābus dē causīs...quod: for two reasons...(namely) because; as often, the adjective precedes the preposition; dat. and abl. pl. of duō is duābus/duōbus not duōs
mihi videntur: they seem to me; “seem” is a common translation for the passive of videō

in vulgum: to the masses
efferi: pass. inf., disciplīnam is acc. subj.
velint: they wish; pres. subj. of vōlō; quod + subjunctive denotes an alleged, not real, cause

17 cōnsōsōs: having trusted in + dat; pf. dep. pple minus...studēre: pay less attention to memory “have less enthusiasm for memory” eōs is acc. subj., minus is a comparative adverb

18 plērisque: to very many; dat. of interest; -que does not decline, but plērus- does
quod...accidit ut: because it happens...that; accidit governs a noun result clause
praesidiō litterārum: with the assistance of (written) letters; “with the protection of...”
in perdīscendō: gerund abl. sg.

19 remittant: they weaken; “they let go”
in prīmis: in particular; “among the first”
hoc...nōn interīrē animās: this...(namely) that...; neuter sg. acc. object of persuādēre, animās is acc. subject in indirect discourse
ab alīs...ad alīōs: from some...into others

20 transīre: animās is still acc. subject
hoc: because of this; i.e. the reincarnation of souls, abl. of cause

21 excitāri: that (people) are roused; add hominēs as acc. subject
metū...neglectō: abl. abs.

Multa: many (things); neut. pl. acc. d.o.
15.1 Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est üsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsī inūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, 2. atque eōrum ut quisque est genere copiīisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ünam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

16.1 Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdīta religiōnibus, 2. atque ob eam causam, quī sunt adfectū graviōribus morbūs quīque in proelīīs periculīisque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolānt aut sē immolātūrōs vovent administrīisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ütuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, 3. nōn posse deōrum immortāliōn nūmen placārī arbitrantur, públicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, 4. quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succensīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. 5. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātīōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia défēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 1
prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulum: drive forward
or push away, 3
quaestus, -ās m.: gain, profit, advantage, 1
quotannis: every year, year by year, 1
reddō, -ere, -dī, -ditus: give back, return, 2
religīō, religiōnis f.: superstitious rites, ritual,
divine manifestation, 3
sacrificium, ī n.: sacrifice, 4
simulācrum, -ī n.: likeness, image, 2

soleō, -ère, -itus sum: be accustomed, 1
succendō, -ere, -dī, censum: kindle under, 2
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, 3
versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3
via, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 2
victima, -ae f.: animal for sacrifice, victim, 1
vīmen, vīminis n.: twig, wicker, withe, 1
vīs, vīs, f., pl. vīrēs: force, power, violence, 4
vivus, -a, -um: living, alive, 2
vovō, -ere, vōvī, vōtum: to vow; pray 1

1 alterum genus: the other kind; In 13.3 Caesar
distinguished two groups, Druids and Knights.
Here Caesar addresses the latter group.
equitum: of knights
Hī: these; i.e. the knights
cum est usus: when there is a need; “is a use”
2 incidit: occurs, happens
quod: which
utī inferrent, prōpulsārent: (namely) that.;
ūtī is an alternative to ut; noun result clause in
apposition to quod with impf. subjunctives
(secondary sequence) governed by accidere
3 ipsī: they themselves; i.e. the knights
illātās: carried on; PPP inferō, supply inūriās
eōrum ut quīisque ita: in the proportion as
each one of them is...so.; in other words “the
more the more,” ut and ita are correlatives
genere copiāisque: in birth and...; abl. respect
amplissimus: very distinguished
5 hanc...grātiam: this lone (form) of influence
nōvērunt: they have come to learn; or “they
know,” pf. noscō
6 dēdīta: devoted to; governs a dative plural
ob eam causam: for this reason
7 quī: (those) who...
sunt adfectī: pf. passive adficīō, + abl. means
quīque: and (those) who...; second parallel
clause parallel to the first
8 prō victimīs: instead of sacrificial animals
immolātūrōs esse will sacrifice (them); fut.
inf., sē is acc. subj.; governed by vovent
9 administrīs...Druidibus: Druids as
performers; abl. obj. of ēuntūr
ad...: for; expressing purpose

quod: because
10 prō vitā hominis: for the life of a man;
governed by the nisi...reddātur
posse...placārī: numen is acc. subject
prō vitā hominis: for the life of a man;
11 eiusdem generis: of the same sort; gen. of
quality
12 immānī magnītūdīne: of immense size; abl. of
quality, immānīs is an i-stem 3rd decl. adj.
simulācra: likeness; Caesar describes image
in the likeness of a man made of wicker
13 membra: acc. direct object of complent
vīvīs hominibus: abl. of means
quisbus succēsīs: with these (images)...; gen.
abs. Caesar prefers to use a relative pronoun
where English prefers the demonstrative
14 quī...sint comprehēsīs: who...have been
cought; pf. pass. subj. in a relative clause of
characteristic
15 grātīōra: more pleasing; acc. pred. with esse
dīs immortālibus: to the immortal gods; an
alternative form for dat. pl. deīs
16 eius generis cōpia: supply of this sort; i.e. of
criminals
18 Huius: of this one; i.e. Mercury, gen. sg.
19 ferunt: they call this one the inventor...
govern a double accusative, inventōrem is
in the predicative position
hunc...decem: they call this one the guide...;
20 hunc...habēre: that this one...; ind. discourse
governed by arbitrantur
vīm maximam: the greatest influence
21 Apollinem...Minervam: supply colunt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>volō, velle, volū: to wish:</th>
<th>quōd: because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular 3rd Conj. except the infinitive, present indicative and present subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pres.</th>
<th>vult</th>
<th>she wishes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>impf.</td>
<td>volēbat</td>
<td>she was wishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>volēt</td>
<td>she will wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>volēt</td>
<td>she wished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plupf.</td>
<td>volēt</td>
<td>she had wished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut. pf</td>
<td>volērit</td>
<td>she will have wished</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vellem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 p. 14, 46  2 p. 28  3 p.52  4 p. 28, 42, 58, 60  5 p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62
17.2. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, lovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Martem bella regere. 3. Huic, cum proelīō dīmīcāre constituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērūmque dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum conferunt. 4. Multīs in civitātibus hārum rērum exstrēctōs tumulōs locīs consecrātīs conspiciārī licet; 5. neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātūm initia sic consecrātum īērīt.

18.1 Gallī sē omēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab Druidibus prōditum dēcunt. 2. Ob eam causam spātia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsum et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. 3. In reliquīs vītāe īnstītūs hōc ferē ab reliquīs dēfferunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnūs militiāe sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre non patiuntur filiūmque puerīlī ētātē in publicō in cōnspectū patris adisterē turpe dēcunt.
1 Dē hīs: concerning these; i.e. Apollo, Minerva, Juno, Jupiter
eandem…quam reliquae gentēs: the same as the rest of the people (have); “the same…which the rest of the people (have),” eandem modifies opinōnēm
2 Apollinem…Minervam…lovem…Martem: that Apollo ...(and) that Minerva ...(and) that Jupiter ...(and) that Mars …; acc. subjects of ind. discourse in apposition to opinīnēm; asyndeton, supply conjunctions
3 huic: to this one; i.e. Mars
4 cum proeliō: when…in battle; cum is adverbial
5 cum superāvērunt: when they have overcome (an enemy)
6 multīs: modifies cīvitātibus; placing the adj. before the preposition emphasizes the role of the adjective
7 locīs consecrātīs: in…; abl. place where
8 capta: things seized; PPP cāpiō in neuter pl., i.e. the rēs in line 5
9 eī reī: for this matter; dat. sg.
10 sē…prōgnātōs (esse): that they were born; prōgnātōs is either an acc. predicate with missing inf. esse or part of a pf. passive inf.
12 noctium: i-stem gen. plural nox, noctis
13 hoc…quod: in this...(namely) because; abl. of respect governed by differunt
14 mūnus militiae: military service; “service of the military”
15 nōn patiuntur: do not allow; 3rd pl. pres. patior
16 filiumque…adsistere (esse) turpe dūcunt: and they consider it is shameful that a son…stand…; supply (esse); the infinitive adsistere is subject of the missing esse and turpe is acc. predicate; all indirect discourse governed by dūcunt, filium is acc. subject of adsistere

Common Uses of the Ablative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>construction</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>urbe captā</td>
<td>the city having been captured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Means</td>
<td>stilō scribēns</td>
<td>writing with a stylus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Agent</td>
<td>ā matre vocātur</td>
<td>she is called by his mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Separation (includes From Which)</td>
<td>timore liberātūr</td>
<td>she is free from fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Manner</td>
<td>cum dīligentīa</td>
<td>with diligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Accompaniment</td>
<td>cum amīcīs</td>
<td>with friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Place Where</td>
<td>in urbibus</td>
<td>in the cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Place From Which</td>
<td>ab marī</td>
<td>from the sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Time When</td>
<td>eō tempore</td>
<td>at that time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Respect (Specification)</td>
<td>linguā different</td>
<td>differ in respect to language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Quality (Description)</td>
<td>est animō bonō</td>
<td>is of good will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Cause</td>
<td>gaudīō commōtus</td>
<td>moved by joy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Comparison</td>
<td>clārior luce</td>
<td>brighter than light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Degree of Difference</td>
<td>multō clārior</td>
<td>much brighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w/ verbs: potior, utor, fungor, fruor, vescor</td>
<td>uū f lădiō</td>
<td>to employ a sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w/ adjectives: dignus, indisgnus</td>
<td>glōriā insignus</td>
<td>unworthy of glory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.1 Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtīs nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus communicant. 2. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūncitatiōnē habētur fructūsque servāntur: uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utrūsque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. 3. Virī in uxorēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspicīōnem venit, dē uxoribus in servīlem modum quaestōnēm habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatīās interficiunt. 4. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omnīaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō supra hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse constābat, iustīs fūneribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

20.1 Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblīcam administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sāncutum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblīcā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, 2. quod saepe homīnēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsiliōm capere cognitum est. 3. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant quaeque esse ex ēūs iūdicāvērunt multītūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblīcā nisi per cōnciliōm loquī nōn concēditur.

administrō (1): to manage, direct; help, 3
aestimātiō, -onis f.: valuation, assessment 1
animal, animalis n.: animal, 2
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2
ciens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4
commodus, -a, -um: convenient, suitable, 2
communicō (1): share, impart, 4
comperīō, -ire, -peri, -pertum: find out, discover, 1
concēdō, -ere: go away, withdraw, yield, 2
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4
coniunctum: jointly, in common, 1
constō, -āre, -stīfī: stand together, 2
cor, cordis n.: the heart, 1
cremō (1): burn, consumer by fire, 2
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 2
dēcedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, die, 4
diligō, -ere, -lexi, -lectum: to love, esteem, 1
dōs, dotis f.: dowry, gift, 2
excruciō (1): torture, torment, 1
facinus, facinoris n.: deed; bad deed, crime 2
 falsus, -a, -um: wrong, mistaken, misled, 1
fāma, -ae f.: rumor, story, hearsay, 2
fructus, -ūs m.: profit, advantage, benefit, fruit, 2
fūnus, fūneris n.: funeral, burial; death, 2
ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 4
illustris, -e: bright, distinguished, 1
impellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus: drive, rouse 2
imperitus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 2
justus, -a, -um: just, fair, 1
lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
libēri, -ōrum m.: children, 2
loquor, -i, locūtum: speak, say, 2
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 3
magnificus, -a, -um: magnificent, splendid 1
memoria, -ae f.: memory, 4
modus, ĵ n.: manner, form; measure, 4
nascor, nasci, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3
nēvē: or not, and not, nor, 2
nex, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 1
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 2
occultō (1): hide, conceal, 3
paterfamilias, -ae m.: paterfamilias, 1
pecūniā, -ae f.: money, 3
postestās, -tātis f.: power, ability, capacity, 3
prōdō, ere, didī, ditum: bring forth; betray 2
propinquus, -a, -um: near, close; subst. kinsman, 2
quaesitio, -tōniōs f.: investigation, inquiry, 1
rūmor, rūmoris f., -ae f.: rumor, hearsay, 2
saepe: often, 3
sanctus, -a, -um: consecrated, hallowed, 1
servilis, -e: slavish, servile, of a slave, 1
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 2
servus, -i, m.: slave, 1
sicut: just as, so as, as if, 2
sumō, -ere, sumpsi, sumptum: take, spend 2
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3
suspicio, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
temerārius, -a, -um: rash, inconsiderate, 1
terreō, -ere, terruī, terrītum: to terrify, 2
torrentum, -i n.: missile-launcher, torture, 3
uter, utra, utrum: each or one of (two), 2
uxor, üxōris f.: wife, spouse, 3
vir, virī m.: man, 4
vivus, -a, -um: living, alive, 2

1 Virī: husbands; an appropriate translation in light of the discussion of wives, uxorēs
quantās…tantās: as much money…so much; correlates; relative and demonstrative respectively
dōtis nōmine: in the name of a dowry
ex suīs…factā: ablative absolute
commūnicāt: contribute (an equal share); i.e. the husband makes a contribution matching the value of the dowry
2 huius omnīs pecūnīae: of…; objective gen. governed by ratiō
3 ratiō habētur: an account is made; “is held”
fructūs: the profits; nom., the word “usufruct” denotes a husband’s ability to enjoy the use and profits of a wife’s dowry as long as he does not diminish the original value of the dowry
uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum: which one of them has survived (the other) in life, to this one…; abl. of respect; eum, though masculine, can apply to the surviving husband or wife
4 pars utrūsque: the portion of each one; i.e. the dowry and the husband’s contribution
superiōrum: previous; gen. pl. comparative
5 in uxorēs…in liberōs: toward…toward
sicutī: alternative to sicut
6 paterfamiliae: the paterfamilias; nom. subject
illūstriōre locō: in a more illustrious position
nātus: pf. passive pple. nascor
dēcessit: has died; “departed,” a euphemism
dē morte: concerning death; modifies rēs
in servīle modum: in the manner of slaves; i.e. just as they investigate slaves after the death of a master, so a wife after the death of her husband
8 compertum est: it is discovered; incriminating evidence
ignī: i-stem abl. singular
9 prō cultū: according to the culture
10 vivīs cordī fuisse: to have been dear to the living; cordī is a predicative dative commonly found with inf. of sum; vivīs is dat. of interest
11 paulō: a little; abl. of degree of difference
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3
12 constābat: it was agreed; “it stood fixed”
ab eīs: by them; i.e. by the dead
dilēctōs esse: pf. pass. inf.
iūstis funeribus cōnfectīs: the due funerals completed; abl. absolute
ānā: together; living burned with the dead
13 quae civitātēs…existimātur: the cities which they consider to…
commodus: more advantageously; comparative adverb
habent lēgis sāncṭum…uti…: have it ordained by laws…; that; uti (ut) introduces an indirect command with pres. subjunctive
14 si quis quid…accēperit: if anyone has received anything…; aliquis, alicquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite alicquid becomes just quid); accēperit is pf. subj.
ā finītīmīs: from neighbors, from those near
15 cum quō aliō: with anyone else; see note l. 15
quod: because
16 hominēs…terrērī…impellī…capere: that people…; insf. are subject of cognitum est
17 dē summīs rēbus: concerning the most important matters
quae visum sunt: (those things) which seemed best (to hide)
quaeque…iūdicāvērunt: and (those things) which…; missing antecedent is obj. of produnt
esse ex iūsū: is of use; i.e. advantageous
19 multitūdīnī: dat. indirect object
prōdunt: bring forth; in contrast to occultiātur
loquī: pres. deponent infinitive
20 concēditur: it is allowed; “it is yielded”
Lesson 18: Caesar V.24

24.1 Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvam perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitīum in hībernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in plurēs civitātēs distribuere; 2. ex quibus ūnam in Morīnōs ducendam Gaiō Fabīō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Quintō Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs Lucio Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum Titō Labiēnō in conßīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Belgīs collocāvit: 3. ēs Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munātium Plancum et Gaium Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. 4. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscripserat, et cohortēs V in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperīo Ambiōriģis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. 5. Ės mīlitibus Quintum Titūrium Sabēnum et Lucium Aurunculīm imperiīs et Catuvolcēranti, mō Ambiōri Eburīnum, quīnam pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum. 6. Ad hunc modum distribuētis legiōnibus, facillīmē inopiae frūmentāriāe sēsē medērī posse exīstīmāvit. 7. Atque hārām tamen omnium legiōnūm hīberna praeter eam, quam Luciō Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem ducendam dererat, mīlībus passuum centum continēbantur. 8. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituīt.

aliter: otherwise, 2
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4
Aurunculeius, -ī m.: Aurunculeius, 2
Catuvołcus –ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2
centum: one hundred, 1
colloqō (1): place together, arrange, set up, 4
confiniō, -īnī: a confine, limit, border, 1
conscribō, -ere, -scripsī: enlist, enroll, 2
distribuo, -ere, -buī, -būtum: divide up, 2
Ėsubiī, -ōrum m.: the Esubii, 1
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3
frūmentārius, -a, -um: full of grain, 2
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4
hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3
inopīa, -ae f.: poverty, want (of), need, 1
interēa: meanwhile, meantime, 3
Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 1
medeōr, -ērī: heal, cure; assist, alleviate (dat) 1
modus, -ī m.: manner, form; measure, 4
Morīnī, -ōrum m.: Morini, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3
Mosa, -ae f.: Mosa (Meuse) river, 1
Munātius, -ī m.: Munatius, 1
muniō, -āre, -ivī, -ītum: to fortify, build, 3
pācātus, -a, -um: peaceful, quiet, 2
Padus, -ī m.: Padus (Po) river, 1
peragō, -ere, -ēgī, actum: pass, go through, 1
Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2
plūs (plūris): more, 4
praefēcio, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum: set (acc) over (dat), put (acc) in charge over (dat), 2
praesum, -esse, -fū: be over, preside over (dat), 2
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2
prōveniō, -īre, -venī: come forward, grow 1
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor, 3
quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2
quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed 1
quoad: until, as far as, as long as, 1
Rēmi, -ōrum m.: Rheims (town), 1
Roscius, -ī m.: Roscius, 2
Samarobrīva, -ae f.: Samarobriva (a town) 2
siccitās, -tātīs f.: dryness, 1
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up, 2
Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4
trans: over, across (+ acc.), 3
Treboniūs, -ī m.: Trebonius, 1
Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4

Background: Upon return from the second expedition to Britain, Caesar discovers that on account of drought the grain supply will be low for the winter. Since no one region can supply the grain for the army, Caesar distributes his forces into a number of smaller camps which, one assumes, can live off the grain in their particular region.
Command in the Winter-Quarters

The highest officer in the Roman Army was the dux, general. When a Roman dux won an important victory, he might be given the title imperator, commander, by his own men. The officers who ranked immediately below the dux and were selected by him to lead a single legion were called legati, a word that means “the commissioned” but is often translated as lieutenant-generals or more commonly legates. This word “legatus” is also used to describe envoys commissioned to convey information on behalf of the dux or senate, so readers should be careful to distinguish a legatus who leads a legion from a legatus who carries news, for example, from Caesar to his allies.

In the passage above, Caesar assigns a legion to each of a number of legati who will play a role in the events that follow in Book V: Gaius Fabius, Quintus Cicerono, Lucius Munatius Plancus, Gaius Trebonius, Quintus Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta. In order to possess imperium, the power to command, these legates had to have been elected by the Centurionate Assembly in Rome at some point in the past to the office of praetor or consul. All the legates, therefore, were members of the senatorial class.

In addition to the legates, Caesar appointed a legion in winter-quarters to the quaestor Marcus Crassus, son of the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus. Elected by Rome’s Tribal Assembly, quaestors were financial officers. On a military campaign, a quaestor would be chosen by the dux from among the elected quaestors and was responsible for distributing soldiers’ pay and procuring supplies.
25.1 Erat in Carnūtibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā
civitāte regnum obtinuerant. 2. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē
benevolentīā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus,
maiōrum locum restituerat. 3. Tertium iam hunc annum regnāntem inimicī,
multīs palam ex civitāte eius auctōrisibus, eum interfēcērunt. 4. Defertur ea rēs
ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū
déficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnūtēs
proficiscī iubet ibique hiemāre quamquaeque proeliōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum
vēnērunt. 3. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent
atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proelīō superiōrēs
fuissent, dēspērātē rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.

26.1 Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repenfīnī
tumultūs ac dēfectīōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīgē et Catuvolcō; 2. quī, cum ad
fīnēs regnī suī Sabīnō Cottaque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna
comportāvissent, Indūtiomāri Trēverī nūntīs impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt
subitōque oppressī signētōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum
vēnērunt. 3. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent
atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proelīō superiōrēs
fuissent, dēspērātē rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt.

ascendō, -ere, -ē, -ēnus: ascend, mount 2
actor,actoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4
Belgium –ī n.: Belgium (part of Belgae), 2
benevolentia, -ae, f.: goodwill, kindness, 1
Carnūtēs, -ōrum m.: Carnutes, 4
Catuvolcus –ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 2
defectio, -tiōnis f.: rebellion, defection, 1
deficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3
defpērō (1): to have no hope, give up, 2
emittō, -ere, -mišī, -missum: send away1
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 1
hiemā (1): spend the winter, 3
Hispānī, -ōrum m.: Spaniard, 1
iam: now, already, soon, 4
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus: drive, rouse 2
impulsus, -ūs m.: incitement, pressure, 1
Indūtiomarus, -ī m.: (chief of Treveri), 1
inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4
lignātor, -ōris m.: wood-cutter, 1
muniō, -ire, -ivī, -ītum: to fortify, build, 3
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3
opera, operae f.: service, hard work, effort, 3
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: crush, burden, overwhelm, 3
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3
palam: openly, publicly, 2
Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2
plūs (plūris): more, 4
praestō: at hand, present, at the service of (dat) 1
quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 3
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: to bring back, 3
regnō (1): to reign, rule as a king, 1
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
restituō, -ere, -stitūi, -stitum: to restore, replace, 1
singulāris, -e: single, individual, alone, 2
Tasgetius, -ī m.: Tasgetius, 3
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over, hand down, pass down, 3
Trēverī, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4
tumultus, -ūs m.: uproar, tumult, confusion, 1
vereor, -ērī, -ītus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
Caius Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Caesar commonly calls the first legate by the cognomen Sabinus (line 14) or nomen Titurius. Keep in mind that these names identify one and the same person. In V.27.1, the same legatus is called Quintus Titurius. Caesar identifies the second legate, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, almost always by the cognomen Cotta.
26.4 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliqueī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdiret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē communī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī possē pospērērent.

27.1 Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā Gaius Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Quintī Titūrī, et Quintus Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesāris ad Ambīoriṃ Beventīrāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambīoriṃ ad hunc modum locūtus est: 2. sēsē prō Caesāris īn sē beneficiā plūrīnum ēi cōnītērī debēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucīs, fīnītimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et fratris fīlius ab Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidium numerō missōs apud sē in servitūtē et catēnīs tenuissent; 3. neque id, quod fēcerit de oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātīs, suaque esse eiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris īn sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdīnim. 4. Čīvitātī porrō hanc fuisset bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre possē, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs copiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. 5. Sed esse Galliae communē consilium: ominibus hibernīs Caesāris oppugnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre possēt; 6. nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā communī libertāte cōnsilium inītum vidērētur.

adeō: to such a degree, such an extent, so; 1
ante: before, in front of (acc); adv. before, 4
Arpīnēius, -ī m.: Arpīneius, 2
beneficiūm, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2
catenā, -ae f.: chain, fetter, shake, 1
cōactus, -ūs m.: compulsion, coercion, 1
colloquium, -īī n.: conversation, talk, 1
colloquor, -ā, -locūtum: to converse, 4
conclāmō (1): cry out together, shout, 2
confidō, -ere, confītus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4
confīteor, -ērī, -fessum: admit, reveal, 1
coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.: pact, union, conspiracy 3
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbū, dēbitum: ought, owe 1
eiusmodī: of this kind, such; so, 3
familiāris, -e: of the family; close friend, 1
frāter, -īs m.: brother, 2
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4
Hispaniā, -ae f.: Spain, 2
humilitātis, -ātīs f.: weakness, lowliness, 1
iam: now, already, soon, 4
imperītus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced (gen), 2
iūdiūcum, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial, 3
Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 3
libertātis, -ātīs f.: freedom, liberation, 2
loquor, -ā, locūtum: speak, say, 2
minuō, -ere, minū: diminish, ebb, 2
missūs, -ūs m.: a sending, launching, 1
modus, ē n.: manner, form; measure, 4
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4
negō (1): to deny, say that…not, 2
opera, operae f.: service, hard work, effort, 3
pendō, -ere, pendendi, pensum: pay, weigh 2
plūrīmus, -a, -um: most, very many, 4
porrō: furthermore, further; long ago, far back, 1
praesertim: especially, particularly, 2
prōdeō, -ēre, -ī, -itum: advance, go forth, 1
quidam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 4
recuperō (1): gain again, regain, recover, 1
remittō, -ēre, -miši, -missum: send back, 4
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4
servitūs, servītūs, f.: servitude, 2
stipendium, -īī n.: payment, tribute; military service, 1
ventītō (1): to come often, resort to, 2
voluntātis, -ātīs f.: will, wish, choice, 2
Ambiorix Advises Sabinus to Leave the Camp

1 suō mōre: according to their custom; cf. I.4.1
2 utī aliquī...prōdire: that someone go forth; ut + impf. subj. prōdeō in an ind. command; aliqūī is a nom. sg. indefinite adj., alternate to aliquis
3 nostrīs: our (men)
4 ad: for...; expressing purpose
5 habēre sēsē: (and) that they had...; either ind. discourse governed by conclamāvērunt just as the ind. command or governed by a missing verb of speech: "(stating) that they had"
6 quae...vellent: (things) which they wanted; impf. subj. volō in a subordinate clause in ind. disc.; the missing antecedent is obj. of habēre
7 de rē communī: about their common interests; "about common affairs"
8 quibus rēbus: by which things; abl. of means
9 contrōversiās: acc. subject of inf. posse
10 minūī: pres. passive inf.
11 spērārent: impf. subj., same as vellent above
12 colloquendi: of discussing; gerund, gen. obj. of causā
13 eques: in apposition to Arpinieus; Arpinieus was an equestrian in rank, the term "eques" refers to his rank in society rather than his occupation as a horseman
14 familiāris: a close friend; nom. appositive
15 iam ante: already before
16 missū: at Caesar’s sending; "by the sending of Caesar," Caesar is a subjective gen.; abl. cause
17 ventītāre: to come often; frequentative of veniō
18 apud quōs: among these; i.e. to these men; English prefers a demonstrative to the relative
19 ad hunc modum: in this manner; "according to this manner"
20 locūtus est: pf. deponent, loquor
21 sēsē...cōnītinērī debēre: that he confessed to owe; not "ought to confess," cōnītinērī is a dep. inf. in ind. discourse that extends at length through quod-clauses to tenuissent; in ind. disc. subordinate verbs not already subjunctive are made subjunctive
22 prō...beneficiūs: (in return) for...; prō + abl.
23 plūrimum ei: acc. object and dat. i.o. of debēre
24 quod...liberātus esset: because...; plpf. subj.
25 Ambiorix lists the reasons he is indebted to Caesar; the verbs are subj. because subordinate verbs in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
26 stipendiō: from...; abl. of separation
27 quod...cōnśuē(v)iisset: which he had been accustomed; plpf. subj., subordinate verb in ind. disc.; the antecedent is neuter stipendiō
28 quodque...remissō essent: and because...; plpf. pass. subj., remittō, subordinate verbs in ind. discourse become subjunctive
29 et: to him; i.e. to Ambiorix, dat. indirect object
30 quōs...tenuissent: whom...; relative clause of characteristic, here with plpf. subj. teneō
31 obsidium numerō: in a group of hostages; abl. place where or accompaniment
32 apud sē: among them; i.e. among the Aduatuci
33 neque id...fēcisse: and that (he) had not done it; ind. discourse parallel to cōnītinērī in l. 8, reflexive sēsē in l. 7 is acc. subject; "id" is acc. d.o. and refers to Ambiorix’s assault
34 quod fēcerit: which...; relative clause of characteristic with perfect subj. faciō
35 iūdicīō (suō), voluntāte suā: abl. cause
36 coāctū civitātis: by the compulsion of the state; abl. of cause
37 suaque...imperia, ut: and that his powers were of such a kind that...; a result clause with impf. subj. in secondary sequence follows
38 nōn minus...iūris...quam ipse: no less (of) authority...than he himself (had); minus is comparative adj. neut. acc. d.o., iūris is a partitive gen.; supply habērer at after ipse
39 in: over
40 civitātī...hanc fugisse...: that to the state this...; ind. discourse, hanc is acc. subj. with pf. inf. of sum; civitātī is a dat. of reference, i.e. from the viewpoint of the state
41 quod...potuerit: (namely) because...; pf. subj. of possum, subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in ind. discourse; the verb in direct disc. is subjunctive for alleged cause, the subject of potuerit is a missing civitās
42 conīrātīōni: dat. obj. of resistere
43 Id sē...posse that he is able...; ind. disc., id is acc. d.o. of probāre, sē is acc. subject
44 facile: adverb of 3rd decl. facilis, facile
45 quod...rērum: because...
46 sit: he is; Ambiorix is nom. subject
47 ut...cōnīfātād: that...; result clause, pres. subj.
48 suīs copiās: abl. means; Ambiorix’s troops
49 populum Rōmānum: acc. subject of posse
50 sed esse: but that it is...;
51 omnibus...oppugnāndīs: for assaulting...; dat. purpose, employ a gerund-gerundive flip
52 dictum diem: the appointed day; PPP dīcō
53 nē...posit: lest any legion...; purpose clause
54 alterae legiōnīi subsidīō: double dative (dat. of interest and dat. of purpose respectively)
55 Gallōsis...potuissē: Gauls could not deny Gaušs
56 cum...vidērētū: since...seemed
57 dē recuperandā:... gerund-gerundive flip
58 initum (esse): to have been entered; pf. inf.
27.7 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē rationem offici prō beneficiōs Caesaris: monēre, čorāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. 8. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfōre bīdō. 9. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium velintne priusquam fīнимī sentiānt ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quinqueaginta, alter paulō amplius ab ēis absit. 10. Illud sē pollicērī et īūreīrāndō cōnfīrmāre tūtum iter per finēs datūrum; 11. quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritūs grātiam referre. Hāc ōrātiōne habātī discēdit Ambiōrīx.

28.1 Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audīerunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dēcō perturbīlitūm salūtūm ēns. 9. Ips Rhīssē; hanc adfore bīnum trōīduē prō Caesāris: monēre Titūrum. 27.42. Rōnum suōsponte populō bellum facere ausam ēxvitēā bantur, quod cāque hāc stimūli passuum circiter quinquaginta, num dēīrum alter mād Labiēdēcere, quīnem aut īs mī priusquam fīsentiant nitimē ductūs ex hērnēi stimēs datūtūs ēt Ambiōrīx. 20
1 quibus...satisfecerit: Since he accomplished enough for these; pf. subjunctive satisfacit, use a demonstrative instead of relative pronoun
2 pró pietāte: out of devotion; i.e. patriotism
3 habēre...sē: he had
4 rationem officiō: a regard for his duty; “a calculation for,” objective genitive
5 salūtī: for his own and the soldiers’ safety; dat. of purpose, suae is a possessive adj. agreeing with salūtī while milītum is a gen. plural
6 manum: body; i.e. group, acc. subject
7 trānsīsse: pf. inf. trānsēō in ind. discourse
8 hanc: this (body); supply manum, acc. subject
9 adfore: would be present; alternative to the fut. inf. of adsum: adfutūrum esse
10 bidūō: in.; abl. of time within
11 Lipsōrum...cōnsilium, velintne: that it is the consideration (of the Romans) themselves whether they are willing...; ind. question with the pres. subjunctive of volō
12 priusquam...sentiant: i.e. before the Gauls find out
13 dūctōs...militēs: acc. d.o. of dūducere
14 dūducere: complementary inf. of velint
15 quōrum alter...alter: of whom one...the other; i.e. Cicero and Labēnus; partitive genitive
16 millia passuum: for...miles; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent; add “ab ēsō abīsit”
17 paulō: a little; “by a little,” abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv. of amplius
18 ab ēsō: from them; i.e. from Titūrius’ troops
19 abīsit: is away; pres. subj. subordinate verb in indirect discourse
20 illud...tūtum iter...datūrum (esse): that... (namely) that (he); illūd is acc. d.o. of pollicērī and cōnfirmāre, “tūtum...datūrum (esse)” is in apposition to illūd; datūrum esse is fut. inf. dō
21 sē pollicērī: that he promised...; deponent inf. īūre-īārāndō: often as two words; abl. means
22 sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
23 temere: heedlessly, blindly, without cause, 1
1 contrā ea: in reply to these things; “against
clāmitābant: kept shouting; frequentative impf.
sērō factūrōs (esse): that (the Romans)
would...; ind. disc. with fut. inf., add acc. subj.
cum...convénissent: after...; plpf. subjunctive
māiorēs: comp. adj. of magnus with manūs
manūs: bodies; i.e. groups of troops, nom. pl.
2 adiūntīs Germānīs: abl. absolute
cum...esse acceptum: after...; plpf. pass.
aliquid calamitātis: some calamity; neut. nom.
subject;“something of calamity”
3 Brevem...occāsiōnem: that...; occāsiōnem is
acc. subj. but the predicate brevem is placed
first in the clause for emphasis
cōnsulēdī: gerund (-ing), with occāsiōnem
4 arbitrāri: that (he) thought; add sē (Titūrius) as
acc. subject; pres. dep. inf. of arbitrōr
Caesarem...profectum (esse): that Caesar;
pf. dep. inf. proficiscor, governed by arbitrāri
5 interficiendi Tasgetī: of killing Tasgetius; gen.
sg. gerundive modifying gen. Tasgetius, which
through a gerund-gerundive flip is translated as
a gerund and acc. object
cōnsiliūm...captūrōs: cōnsiliūm capere is
an idiom: “to adopt an argument”
fuisset captūrōs: would have adopted; pf. inf.
sum + fut. pple capiō; in direct discourse this
would be cēpissent, an apodosis in a mixed
contrary-to-fact condition; parallel with
ventūrōs esse, it complementing the protasis
sī...adesset below; see page 61
neque Eburōnēs: acc. subj. with ventūrōs esse
6 sī...adesset: if that one were present; i.e.
Caesar, impf. subjunctive adsum, in direct disc.
a protasis in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
with fuisset captūrōs and ventūrōs esse; cf. p. 61
nostīrī: for us; nostīrī is gen. sg. of the personal
pronoun nōs; this gen. is an objective gen.
modifying contemptūōne
ventūrōs esse: would come; fut. inf. (fut. pple +
inf. of sum); in direct discourse it would be
venīrent, an apodosis in a pres. contrary-to-fact
condition with sī...adesset above; parallel to
the 1st apodosis fuisset captūrōs, see note, p. 61
Nōn hostem...spectērē: that (he) saw not the
enemy but the situation (as) the authority; add
sē as acc. subj.; spectērē governs a double acc.
where auctūrem is an an acc. predicate
7 subesse Rhēnum: Rhēnum is acc. subj.
magnō...dolōrī served as great grief for the
Germans; “was for great grief for the
Germans,” double dative construction: “magnō
dolōrī” is dat. of purpose and “Germānīs” is
dat. of interest
8 Ariovistī mortem...victōriās: subject of esse
9 ārdēre: that Gaul is on fire; “is eager (to act),”
fire is a common metaphor for passion, in this
case, feelings of anger and indignation
tot...acceptīs: abl. absolute
sub...imperium: underneath...; sub governs an
abl. place where or as here acc. place to which
redactam: PPP redigō, modifying Gallīam
superīōre...exstinctā: abl. absolute
reī militāris: of military affairs; with glōria
10 quis...persuādēret who would persuade
himself this; in dir. discourse a deliberative
pres. subjunctive, but in ind. discourse
secondary sequence it is impf. subj.
sine certā...dēscendisse: (namely) that...; ind.
disc. in apposition to neuter acc. sg. hoc above
sine certā rē: without a reliable reason
11 dēscendisse: had lowered himself; pf. inf.
Ambiorix is acting unbecoming of his status
Suam sententiam...: that his opinion...; i.e.
Ambiorix’s opinion; Sabinus is still
employing Ambiorix as subject
in utramque partem: on each side
12 sī...esset...perventūrōs (esse): If...was..., would
arrive; in dir. discourse a fut. more
vivid (sī erit, perveniet); in ind. disc. in
secondary seq. the protasis is impf. subj. and
the apodosis a fut. inf., see grammar box, p. 59
dūrius: neut. sg. comparative adj., nom. pred.
13 sī...cōnsentīrēt, esse posītam: if...agreed,
had been placed...; in dir. disc., mixed simple
condition (sī consentīt, posita est); in ind. disc. in
secondary sequence the subordinate verb
becomes impf. subj. and the main verb pf.
pass. inf. (which we translate as plpf. in
secondary sequence); see the box, p. 59
14 ūnām...salūtem: a single (means of) safety
Cottae atque ēorum: gen. modifying
cōnsiliūm, the acc. subject of habēre
15 qui dissentīrēnten: i.e. those who disagreed
with Titūrius; verbs in subordinate clauses in
ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
quem...exitium: what outcome does the
plan...?; interrog. adj. and noun introducing a
question; acc. d.o. of habēre in ind. disc.
in quō: in which...; the cōnsiliūm of Cotta and
others opposing Titūrius is the antecedent
16 periculum: (there was)...danger; add esset
longinquā obsidīōne: with...; abl. of cause
esset timenda: had to be feared; “was going
to be feared” passive periphrastic (gerundive +
impf. subj. of sum) expressing necessity
30.1 Hác in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prēmīisque ācriter resisterētur, ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 2. ‘neque is sum,’ inquit, ‘quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortīs perīculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravīus quid acciderit, abs tē ratīōnem reposcent; 3. quī, sī per tē līceat, perēndīnī diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniunctī communēm cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs, aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

31.1 Cōnsurgit ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utramque et ŏrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: 2. faciēm esse rem, seu maneant, seu profiēscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllum sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad medium noctem perducitur. 3. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. 4. Cōnsūmitur vigiliōs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quīisque mīles circumspercerit, quid sēcum portāre possit, quid ex īnstrumēntō hībernōrum relinquire cōgerētur. 5. Omnia excogitantur, quàrē nec sine perīculō maneātur et lūngōre mīlitum et vigiliōs perīculum augeātur. 6. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs profiēscantur, ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimo Ambiōrigē cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīisque impedimentīs.
Cotta Argues Against Leaving the Camp, but the Romans Depart

1 hāc...habitā: ablative absolute
   in utramque partem: on each side
   prīmisque ordinibus: and the first ranks; i.e. centurions

2 resisterētur: (Sabinus) was resisted; impf.
   pass. subjunctive; cum is likely causal in sense
   Vincite: Prevail; i.e. win the dispute
   vultis: 2nd. present volō
   id clāriōre vōce: and (he said) it with a rather loud voice; supply inquit, ablative of manner
   loses “cum” when there is an adjective, here a comparative adjective

3 ut...exaudirent: so that...; purpose clause with
   impf. subj., secondary sequence
   is...qui...terrear: one who would be terrified;
   i.e. “the sort of man who would...; is is a predicate; relative clause of characteristic with
   a pres. subj.
   gravissimē: superlative adverb

4 ex vōbis: by you; i.e. “danger (heard) from
   you,” abl. source
   hi: these (soldiers); i.e. at the meeting
   sapient: will know; future tense
   gravius quid: anything more serious; quid is
   indefinite after sī

5 sī...acciderit, poscent: happens...will demand;
   future more vivid (sī fut. pf., fut.), see, p. 59
   quī: (and these) who
   sī...liceat, sustineat...nōn...interēant: should
   be allowed... would endure... would not perish;
   future less vivid (sī + pres. subj., pres. subj.),
   licet, sustineō, and interēō; see box, p. 61
   per tē: by you; “through you”
   perēndinō diē: on...; abl. time when

6 hibernis: winter-quarters; throughout this
   episode hiberna denotes a winter camp
   commūnem...bellī cāsum: bellī is a genitive
   of description modifying cāsum

7 nōn...interēant: would not die; nōn modifies
   the finite verb, pres. subj. interēō

8 cōnsurgitur: they rise from council; “it is
   arisen (by them) from the council,” impersonal
   passive governs a dat. of agent, here missing) and
   is often translated in the active, see p. 57
   comprehendunt utramque: they detain both;
   i.e. the centurions stop Sabinus and Cotta
   ōrānt nē: plead that...not; negative ind.
   command governs pres. subj. in primary seq.

9 faciēm esse rem: (and) that the matter; ind.
   disc. governed by ōrānt, asyndeton, add “et”

10 seu...seu: whether...or; sīve...sīve, introduces
   and indirect question with present subjunctives
   sī modo: provided that...; “if only,” a proviso
   clause governs a present subjunctive
   contrā: on the other hand

11 nūllum sē salītēm persicere: that they...;
   sē is acc. subj., nūllum salītēm is acc. d.o. in
   indirect discourse governed by ōrānt and
   parallel to “faciēm esse rem” above
   Rēs: the matter; i.e. the discussions

12 dat manūs: gives his hands; i.e. surrenders

13 sententia: the opinion
   prīmā lūce: abl. of time when
   (eōs) itūrōs (esse): that they...; fut. inf. eō, īre

14 vigilīs: with night-watches
   sūa...circumspiceret: looks over his own
   things; i.e. inspects equipment, gear, property
   quīsque: each...; an adjective modifying miles
   quīd...posset: what he was able...; impf. subj.
   possum in indirect question; with sūa, this
   construction is an example of prolepsis
   (anticipation): “his things what he was able...”
   is equivalent to “what things he was able”

15 quīd...cōgerētur: (and) what he was forced;
   ind. question parallel to the one above
   ex instrūmentō: from the store, from the
   stock; i.e. from the inventory

16 quārē...maniētur...augeātur: for what
   reason they would remain not without
   danger and danger would be increased both
   by the fatigue and night-watches of the
   soldiers; ind. question in apposition to omnia,
   the pres. subjunctive is potential subjunctive

17 Prīma lūce: at...; abl. time when
   castrīs: the camp; castra is plural in form but
   singular in translation
   ut...cōnsīliūm datum (esse): as (if men) who
   had been persuaded that the plan had been
   given (to them) not by an enemy but by a man
   most friendly, Ambiorīx; ut here is equivalent
   to “ut sī,” which introduces a conditional
   sentence of comparison with the subjunctive
   (apodosis is missing); plpf. pass. subj. of
   persuādeō is used impersonally (common in
   verbs governing a dative), the dat. obj. quībus
   may be translated as subject; dātum (esse) is a
   pf. pass. inf. in an acc. + inf. construction that
   is subject of persūāsūm esset. An alternative
   translation is “as if (men) who had been
   persuaded by Ambiorīx not as an enemy but as
   a man most friendly (to them)”

19 longissimō aģmine maximīs impedīmentīs:
   ablative absolutes; add pple “being” for each
32.1 At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliōsque dē profectiōne eōrum sensērupt, collocātīs īnsidiās bipertō in silvīs, opportūnō atque occultō locō, ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant 2. et, cum sē maiō pars agminis in magnā convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascensū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coeperunt.

33.1 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante provīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque ēīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. 2. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam prōvidērunt, iussūrunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta relinquent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. 4. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit:

---

agmen, agminis n.: column, battle line, formation
ante: before, in front of (acc); adv. before
ascensus, -īs m.: ascent, climb
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause
bipertō: in two parts
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin
coigōtā (1): to think, ponder, turn over
cohōrtor, -ōris m.: commander, leader
coēptum: commence, commit, entrust
coēptum: fail, give out on, sink
dēmum: at length, finally
dispōnō, -ere: to arrange distribute
eiusmodī: of this kind, such; so
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await
fremitus, -ūs m.: roaring, murmuring
imperātor, -ōris m.: commander, leader
incommodus, -a, -um: unfortunate, disastrous
insidiās, -ārum, f.: ambush, plot, trap
longitūdō, -inis f.: length, width
negōtium, ii n.: business, task
nocturnus, -a, -um: nocturnal, nightly
novus, -a, -um: new, fresh, young, recent
obeō, -ire, -īvi, -ītem: go to meet, attend to
occultō (1): hide, conceal
officium, -īi n.: duty, obligation
opportūnus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful
orbis, -is m.: sphere, circle (+ terrae: world)
ostendō, -ere, -i, ītus: show, promise
posteāquam: after (+ indicative)
prōnuntiō (1): speak forth or in advance
prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visum: to foresee, take precautions, prepare for
prēprehendō, -ere, -dī: blame; hold back
sentīō, -ire, -is, sēnsum: to feel, realize
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland
timidus, -a, -um: fearful, shy
trepidō (1): be agitated, be in confusion
vigilia, -ae f.: watch (1/4 period of night)
1 ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliūisque: from the roar at night and the night-watches; i.e. the Roman soldiers had not settled down but instead stayed awake and made much noise
sensērunt: they realized
2 collocātīs īnsidiās: abl. absolute bipertūō: in two parts; adverb opportūnō...locō: in...; abl. place where in apposition to in silvis
3 a mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus: about two miles away; “from about two thousand of paces,” partitive genitive;
4 maiores pars agminīs: i.e. the Romans cum...dēmisisset: when...dropped; plpf. subjunctive
5 ex utrāque parte: on both sides; “from each side”
eius vallis: of this valley; eius is demonstrative nōvissimōs: the rear (soldiers); the “most recent” soldiers are the “last” or “rear” soldiers in a column of soldiers, the enemy is attacking the rear and front of the battle column
6 premere, prohibēre, committere: all of the infinitives are governed by coepērunt
prīmōs: first (soldiers); the front of the column ascensūs: from...; abl. of separation iniquissimō nostrīs locō: (in) a place most unfair to our (men); place where, superlative proelium committere: commence battle; idiom
8 tum dēnum: then at last Titūrius: Sabinus; Quintus Titūrius Sabinus qui...providēsset: since he had foreseen nothing beforehand; “who had foreseen nothing beforehand,” quī + plpf subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quī = cum is) causal in sense; cf. l. 11
trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere: historical infinitives with nom. Titūrius as subject, translate all three in the 3rd sg. imperfect; at times used to give a rapid sequence of events
9 haec ipsa: (he did) these very things; neuter pl. acc., supply a verb ut...omnia...vidērentur: so that all (his wits) seemed; a result clause, omnia is subject; videor is frequently translated as “seem;” the word “omnia” pertains to his internal turmoil
eum: him; i.e. Titūrius, object of dēficere
10 quod...cōnsuēvit: which was accustomed eis: to those; dat. of interest with accidere
11 cōnsilium capere: to adopt a plan; idiom quī cōgitāsset...fuisset: since he had realized...and had been; “who had realized...” just as above quī + plpf. subjunctives in a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quī = cum is) causal in sense haec posse: that these things...; neut. pl. acc. subject of inf. of possum
12 ob eam causam: for this reason; “on account of this reason”
fuisset: pluperfect subjunctive of sum nūlā in rē: in nūlā rē; order emphasizes adj.
13 commūnī salūtī: dat. object of impf. dēsum in appallandīs cohortandīisque mīlibus: both are gerundives modifying mīlibus, use a gerund-gerundive flip
14 (officia) imperātōris: add “officia;” there is a contrast between the officia imperātōris and officia mīlitis
praestābat: performed
15 minus: less; comparative adv. modifies facile facile: easily; irregular adv. of facilis, facile omnia...obīre: to attend to everything quōque: in each...; abl. place where, quisque
16 faciendum esset: had to be done; “was going to be done,” gerundive + sum (here, impf. subj.) is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity; subjunctive in an ind. question possent: they were able; Cotta and Titūrius prōnūntiāre: that (the centurions) command...; + indirect command ut...cōnsisterent: ind. command, impf. subj.
17 in orbem: in a circle; so that all soldiers have their backs to one another and fight forward Quod: this...; “which” translate the relative adj. as a demonstrative adj. with cōnsilium
18 reprehendendum nōn est: must not be blamed; gerundive + sum is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity or obligation incommodē: unadvantageously, disastrously

Cum-Clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cum haec verba audīvit</th>
<th>1. temporal</th>
<th>When he heard these words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cum haec verba audīsset</td>
<td>2. circumstantial</td>
<td>When/After he had heard these words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. causal</td>
<td>Since/Because he had heard these words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. concessive</td>
<td>Although he had heard these words</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
33.5 nam et nostrīs milītibus sperminutī et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō milītēs ab signīs discēderent, quae quīisque eōrum càrissīma habēret, ab impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētō omnia complērentur.

34.1 At barbarīs cōnsiliōm nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiāre iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: īllōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservāri quaeuncumque Rōmānī reliquisserunt: proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. 2. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugnadī parēs; nostrī, tametsī ab duce atē Fortūnā désērēbantur, tamen omnem sper sallūtīs in virtūte ponēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurret, ab ēa parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. 3. Quā rē animadvertī, Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocēri posse), 4. rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnquanāntur.

35.1 Quō praeceptō ab eīs diligentissimē observātō, cum queapiam cohors ex orbe exesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugīebant. 2. Interim eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.

acciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2
alcer, alacrīs, alacre: eager, spirited, 1
aperiō, -āre, -āri, -āritus: open, disclose, 3
arripiō, -ere, -ripū: to grab, snatch, lay hold of, 1
cadō, cadere, cæcidiō, cáthūrum: to fall, 1
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 1
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cēssum: withdraw, move, 2
clāmor, clāmōris m.: shout, cry, 2
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3
dēsōro, -ere, -ruī: desert, forsake, abandon, 1
dēsperātiō, -tōnis f.: hopelessness, despair, 1
diligēns, -entīs: careful, diligent, accurate, 2
dux, ducēs m. f.: leader, guide, chief, 4
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
exercitātiō, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 3
flētus, -īs m.: weeping, wailing, 1
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
impetus, -iōnis m.: attack, onset, assault, 7
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 1
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 2
levitās, -tātis f.: lightness; inconstancy, 1
minūō, -ere, minūitum: to diminish, ebb, 2
necessē: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4
nēvē, neu: or not, and not, nor, 2
noceō, -āre, -uī, -ītum: harm, injure, hurt, 2
nudō (1): to make naked or bare, uncover, 1
observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 2
orbīs, -is m.: sphere, (+ terrae: world), 2
pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 2
praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -cepūm: receive in advance, instruct, admonish, 2
praeda, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 2
procūl: far, from a distance, from afar, 3
prōcurrō, ere, currū, cursūm: run forward, 2
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 1
prōnūntiō (1): speak forth or in advance, 4
properō (1): to hasten, complete quickly, 1
propius: more closely, nearer, 3
quiūcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quispiam, quae-, quod-: anyone, anything (adj. any), 2
quotiens: as often as, how often?, 1
refugiō, -ere, -fugiō: to flee back, run back, 1
reservō (1): lay up, save up, reserve, 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
studium, -i n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3
tametēs: even if, although, though, 1
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2
vēlox, vēlōcis adj.: swift, rapid, quick, 1
vulgus, -īs m.: mass, mob, multitude, 2
1 *nostrīs militibus*: for our soldiers; dat. interest
2 *alacrīrēs*: comparative adjective
3 *efficit*: made (x) (y); double acc., alacrīrēs is in the predicative position
4 *quod*: because
5 *factum (esse)*: pf. pass. inf. following vidēbātur
6 *vidēbātur*: seemed; impf. pass.
7 *accidit*: it happened; governs the noun result clause ut...complērentur
8 *quod fierī...erat*: (which it was necessary to happen); parenthetical, inf. fiō
9 *vulgō*: commonly, generally; abl. as adverb
10 *signis*: the standards; i.e. military standards
11 *habēret*: considered; “held,” impf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, governs a double accusative
12 *barbarīs...dēfuit*: fail the barbarians; dat. of interest
13 *tōtā acē*: on the entire battle line; place where
14 *prōnūntiāre*: commanded; dūcēs is acc. subj., the inf. governs the ind. command (nē)
15 *nē quīs*: that not anyone...; aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quīs, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quīd)
16 *illōrum esse praedam*: (and) that the loot was theirs; i.e. the Gauls’, the indirect discourse is parallel to the ind. command and likewise governed by prōnūntiāre
17 *illis*: for them; dat. of interest
18 *quae tumque...reliquissent*: whatsoever...; relative clause of characteristic (plpf. subj.); the missing antecedent is acc. subject of reservāri
19 *proinde...existimārent*: therefore let them

### Ablative Absolute in Translation

Absolutes are circumstantial, causal, or concessive in sense, even if the translation does not reveal it. Cum-Clauses are just as versatile and can have a similar variety of uses within a Latin sentence.

| verbīs auditīs | 1. raw translation | (with) the words having been heard...
| 2. Circumstantial | *When/After* the words had been heard...
| 3. Causal | *Since/Because* the words had been heard...
| 4. Concessive | *Although* the words had been heard...
| Caesar audiente | 1. raw translation | (with) Caesar listening
| 2. Circumstantial | *When/While* Caesar is/was listening...
| 3. Causal | *Since/Because* Caesar is/was listening...
| 4. Concessive | *Although* Caesar is/was listening...
Lesson 26: Caesar V.35.3 – V.36

35.3 Rūrsus cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; 4. sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquiēbatur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla confertī vitāre poterant. 5. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflictātī, mulūs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmpτā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. 6. Tum Titō Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmō pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātīs, utrumque femur trāgulā trācitur; 7. Quintus Lucānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filīō subvenit, interficitur; 8. Lucius Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerārūt.

36.1 Hīs rēbus permōtūs Quintus Titūrius, cum procūl Ambiōrigēm suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretēm suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittīt rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. 2. Ille appellātūs respondit: si velīt sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdīne impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cotti sauciō communīcat, 3. sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiōrigē ōnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō de suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērāt.

adhortor, -āri, -ātum: encourage, urge on, 1
adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
armātus, -a, -um: armed, armor-clad, 2
auctōritās, -ātis f.: influence, clout, 3
Balventius, -i m.: Balventius, 1
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus: withdraw, move, 2
cœpiē, cœpisse, cœptum: to begin, 9
cohortor, -āri, cohortātum: urge on, incite 3
coolloquor, -quō, -locūtum: to converse, 4
committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4
communícō (1): share, impart, 4
confertūs, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
conflictō (1): contend with, harm, 1
conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus: see, behold 5
consumō, -ere, -sumpsī: to use up, spend, 2
eō, īre, īvī, ītum: to go, come, 4
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3
femur, femori n.: thigh, 1
fidēs, ei f.: faith, honor, 4
funda, ae f.: sling, 3
Gnaeus, -i m.: Gnaeus, 1
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
impetrō (1): to obtain, accomplish, 3
incommodus, -a, -um: unfortunate, disastrous, 3
indignus, -a, -um: unworthy, undeserving, 1
interpōnō, -ere, -posuī: include, introduce, 2
interpres, interpretēs m/f.: messenger, 1
Lucānius, -i m.: Lucanus, 1
lūx, lūcis, f.: light, 3
lēgē, lēcum, f.: to deny, say that…not, 2
nocēō, -ere, -uī, -itum: harm, injure, hurt, 2
octāvus, -a, -um: eighth, 1
ōs, ōris n.: face, mouth 1
parcō, -ere, pepercī: to spare, refrain (dat), 2
perseverō (1): to persist, persevere, 1
pilum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3
Pompeius, -ī m.: Pompey, 1
procūl: far, from a distance, from afar, 3
respondeō, -ēre, -diē, -ōnsum: to answer, 3
revertor, -ā, reversus sum: to turn back, return, 2
rogō (1): to ask; tell, 2
rūrsus: again, backward, back, 4
sauciō, -a, -us: wounded, injured, hurt, 1
sinō: but if, if however, 1
stō, -āre, stēti, stātum: stand still, stop, 3
subveniō, -ēre, -vēni, -ventum: come up to, aid, relieve, 2
Titus, -i m.: Titus, 4
tot: so many, 2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>unde erant egressī</strong>: plpf. dep. ēgregior revertī: present deponent inf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>cesserant</strong>: had withdrawn; As some of the Romans made attacks from the circle (orbis), the opposing enemy withdrew temporarily and the flanks (quī proximī steterant) attacked. When the Romans returned to the circle, the opposing enemy would advance once again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>locum tenēre</strong>: to hold ground; i.e. if the Romans did not advance in groups but instead remained together in the circle, they should wish; an impf. subjunctive, the protasis of a mixed condition in secondary sequence; <strong>nec...neque</strong>: neither...nor; linking the apodosis <strong>locus</strong>: opportunity... <strong>virtūtī</strong>: for valor; dat. of purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>coniunctī</strong>: modifies the nom. subject <strong>incommodis cōnflictātī</strong>: harmed by so many disadvantages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>multīs...accēptīs</strong>: ablative absolute <strong>resistēbant</strong>: they kept on fighting; iterative impf. <strong>magnā...cōnsūmpτā</strong>: abl. absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>cum...pugnārētur</strong>: although they fought; cum is concessive in force; impersonal passive p. 57 <strong>quod ipsīs...indignum</strong>: which was unworthy of the Romans themselves; indignus, “unworthy of,” governs an abl., here the intensive ipsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>Titō Balventīō</strong>: to Titus Balventius; dat. of interest <strong>superiōre annō</strong>: in...; abl. of time when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>prīmum plūm</strong>: the first pilum; the officer known as Primus Pilus was the highly ranked centurion who threw the first pilum in battle; Titus held this rank during the previous year <strong>virō fortī</strong>: dat. in apposition to Titō Balventīō <strong>magnae auctorītātīs</strong>: of great clout; gen. of quality parallel with dative fortī <strong>utrumque femur</strong>: each thigh; neuter subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td><strong>eiusdem ārdinis</strong>: of the same rank; gen. quality <strong>fortissimē</strong>: superlative adverb <strong>pugnāns</strong>: nom. sg. pres. pple, pugnō <strong>subvenit</strong>: he is approaching to help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td><strong>in adversum ōs</strong>: full on the mouth; “onto the opposing mouth,” acc. place to which; another meaning for ōs, ārīs is “face”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td><strong>his rēbus</strong>: because of these things; abl. cause <strong>suōs</strong>: his own (men); i.e. Ambiorix’s men, the reflexive should grammatically refer to the subject Cotta’s men but it does not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><strong>eum</strong>: him; i.e. Ambiorix <strong>rogātum</strong>: to ask; supine (PPP + um) in the accusative expresses purpose, which in English is often expressed with an infinitive <strong>ut...parcat</strong>: ind. command following rogātum <strong>sibi militibusque</strong>: him and (his) soldiers; i.e. Cotta and his soldiers <strong>sī velit</strong>: if he wishes; subordinate clauses in ind. discourse often fall into the subjunctive; here a pres. subjunctive of volō, velle in what was originally a present simple condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td><strong>sēcum</strong>: cum sē <strong>licēre</strong>: it is allowed (for him); i.e. for Titurius, ind. discourse with an impersonal verb <strong>spērāre</strong>: that (he) hoped; i.e. Ambiorix hoped <strong>ā multūtūnī</strong>: i.e. from the Gauls <strong>quod..pertinēat</strong>: (that) which... the missing antecedent is acc. subject of posse impetrārī; this is a relative clause of characteristic with the present subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td><strong>ipsī</strong>: that for (Titurius) himself; dative interest or possible a dat. of agent with nocītum īrī <strong>nihil</strong>: not at all; “in no way,” acc. of respect <strong>nocītum īrī</strong>: it would not be harmed; “it is going to be harmed;” a future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal <strong>ipsī...nocītum īrī</strong>: that indeed he himself would not at all be harmed; “indeed for him himself not at all it was going to be harmed,” a rare future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, īre), here impersonal <strong>sē...interpōnēre</strong>: he gave his pledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><strong>ille</strong>: that one; i.e. Titurius speaks with Cotta videātur: it seems good; i.e. if he agrees with Ambiorix’s terms; subordinate clauses govern a subjunctive in ind. discourse <strong>pugnā</strong>: from battle; abl. separation <strong>ut...colloquāntur</strong>: (namely) that...; noun result clause governed by impersonal videātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td><strong>spērāre</strong>: that (Cotta) hoped; see also line 15 <strong>ab ēō</strong>: from him; i.e. from Ambiorix <strong>sē itūrūm esse</strong>: fut. inf. eō, īre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
37.1 Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlītum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdīnum centūriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum proprius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant imperat. 2. Interim, dum dē condicioṇibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīgē īnstititur sēmō, paulātīm circumventus interficitur. 3. Tum vērō suō mōre ‘Vīctorīam’ conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdīnēs perturbant. 4. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlītum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; 5. ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitūdīne hostium prēmerētur, aquilam intrā vallum proiecit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; 6. noctū ad unum omnēs, despērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt. 7. Paucī ex proeliō lapsī incertiōs itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hīberna perveniunt atque cūm dē rēbus gestīs certīōrem faciunt.

38.1 Hāc victoriā sublātūs Ambiorīx statīm cum equītātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius regnō finītimī, profiĉīscitūr; neque noctem neque diem intermitterit pēditātumque sēsē subsequi iubet. 2. Rē demonstrātā Aduatuciōsequē concītātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandi atque ulcīscendi Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās acceperint, inīūriīs occāsionem dīmittānt: 3. interfecēs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercītūs interīsse demonstrat; 4. nihil esse negotī, subītō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemēt interīcī; sē ad eam rem profiĉētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrtiōne Nerviōs persuādet.
Ambiorix Kills Sabinus and Incites the Nervii

55

sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4
statim: immediately, at once, 4
Titus, -i m.: Titus, 4
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 2
tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, officer, 2
ulcīscor, -i, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 1
ululātus, -ūs m.: howling, wailing, yelling, 1
unde: whence, from which source, 3
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

1 quōs...tribūnōs militum...habēbat: those tribunes of the soldiers whom...; tribūnōs is antecedent—not part of—quōs...habēbat
2 sequī: inf. sequor
iubet: both tribūnōs, centurionēs are objects
3 accessisset: plpf. subjunctive accēdō
iussus: PPP iubeō, iubēre
imperātum facit: carries out the command; “the thing having been commanded” PPP
sūs: his own (men); dat. object of imperat
ut...faciunt: ind. command
idem: the same thing; id-em, neuter acc. sg.
4 dē condicionibus...agunt: they talk about the conditions.; common idiom employing agō and dē + ablative, here the conditions of surrender
inter sē: with one another; ‘among themselves’
longior...instītūtur sermō: a longer conversation is arranged
cōnsultō: deliberately; ablative as an adverb
5 circumventus: the nom. subject is Sabinus
6 suō mōre: by their custom; “from their custom”
Victoriam: Latin exclamation take the acc.
7 impetū...factō: ablative absolute
in nostrōs: against our (soldiers)
8 Reliquī: the remaining (men); i.e. the survivors
sē...recepīunt: retreat; “take themselves back”
9 erant ēgressī: plpf. deponent ēgredior
ex quibus: from these; for transitions, English speakers prefer a demonstrative
10 aquilam: the eagle; i.e. the entire wooden standard which contained the golden image of an eagle on top; the aquilifer saves the eagle from capture as one today might save a flag
vallum: i.e. the wall of the camp, which often consisted of mound of earth with a wooden palisade on top and a deep ditch below
prō: in front of; + ablative
pugnāns: pres. pple, pugnō
11 aegrī...sustinent: with difficulty sustained; “scarcely sustained”
ad noctem: till the night
noctū: at night; adverb
ad ēnum: to the man
12 despērātās salūte: abl. abs.
ipsī: themselves; nom. pl., intensive pronoun
lapses: having slipped; pf. deponent pple labor
incertīs itineribus: by uncertain routes
13 in hīberna: into winter-quarters; a journey of about 100 miles at this time
14 certīōrem faciunt: inform; “make him more certain;” a common idiom in Caesar
gestīs: carried out; PPP gerō
15 sublātus: uplifted; i.e. “elated,” PPP tollō, as often, the prefix sub- means “from under up”
in Aduatucōs: to the Aduatuci; or ‘among...’
16 regnō: dative with the predicate adj. finītīmī
17 subsequī: pres. deponent inf.
Rē...concitātīs: two ablative absolutes
18 posterō diē: on...; ablative time when
in Nervīōs: to the Nervii, among the Nervii
nē...acceperint (et)...dīmittant: that they not...; negative ind. command governed by hortātur
suī...liberandī: of freeing themselves; gen. sg. gerundive; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: make suī the gerund’s object (sē), this genitive modifies occasīōnem
19 ulcīscendī Rōmānōs: a gen. sg. gerund and acc. object (this construction is unusual since it is often expressed as a noun + modifying gerundive); parallel to liberandī and likewise modifying occasīōnem
prō eīs...iūriīs: (in return) for...; eīs is a demonstrative modifying iūriīs
quās acceperint: perfect subj. in a relative clause of characteristic; the antecedent is fem. plural iūriīs
20 interfectōs esse: that...; pf. pass. infinitive interficīō with légātōs duōs as acc. subject
légātōs duōs: i.e. Sabinus and Cotta
21 interīsse: to have perished; interīssē, pf. inf. interesse with partem as acc. subject
nihīl esse nēgōtī: that there is no trouble; “nothing of business,” nēgōtī is a partitive gen. the acc. + inf. is governed by profitētur below
oppressam: having been surprised; oppressīmō
22 hiemet: pres. subj., verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive
interīcī: pres. passive inf., legiōnēm is acc. subj.
sē: that he (was); ad esse; following profitētur
39.1 Itaque cönfestim dîmissīs nuntīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pluemoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et dē improviso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. 2. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitū adventū interciperuntur. 3. Hīs circumventīs magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum conscendunt. 4. Aegrē is diēs sustentātūr, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte ponēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs confirmēbant.

40.1 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cönfestim ab Cicerōne litterae magnīs prōpositōs praemiīs, sī pertulissent: obsessīs omnibus viās missī intercipiuntur. 2. Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turris admodum CXX excitātur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae dēesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. 3. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctīs copīs, castra oppugnānt, fossam complent. Eādem ratīōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur: 4. hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.

adipiscor, -ī, -adeptum: get, obtain, reach, 1 admodum: completely, quite; just about, 2 advolō (1): to fly to, rush to, 1 aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4 Ceutronēs, -um m.: Ceutrones (tribe) 1 cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4 compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6 comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3 concurrō, -ēre, -currī, -cursus: run eagerly, clash, 2 confestim: immediately, 4 confidō, -ere, confīsus sum: trust, believe, rely upon, 4 conscendō, -ēre, -īnsus: climb, board, 1 deinceps: one after another, successively, 1 dīmintō, -ere, -missī, -missus: send (away), 3 excitō (1): excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3 fāma, -ae f.: rumor, story, hearsay, 2 fīō, fieri, factus: become, be made, 3 fossа, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 2 Geidumnī, -ōrum m.: Geidumnī, 1 Grudiī, -ōrum m.: Grudiī, 1 improvisorūs, -a, -um: unforeseen, unexpected, 1 incipīō, -ere, incēpi, inceptum: begin, 1 incrēdibilīs, -e: unbelievable, 1 intercipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum: catch, intercept, 3 Levācī, -ōrum m.: Levaci, 1 lignātiōnīs f.: gathering of timber, 1 materia, -ae f.: timber, wood, material, 2 necessē: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4 noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4 nōndum: not yet, 3 nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2 obsideo, -ēre, sēdīi, sessum: besiege, beset, 2 opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 2 perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: carry through, 2 perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3 perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4 Pleumoxī, -ōrum m.: Pleumoxī, 1 posterus, -a, -um: next, following, 2 prīdiē: on the day before, the previous day, 1 prōpōnō, -ere, posūi, positum: to set forth, 1 quoque: also, 2 repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4 silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4 socius, -i m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2 sustentō (1): to hold up, sustain, maintain, 1 via, -ae f.: road, way, path, 2 victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 1
2 eorum: their; i.e. of the Nervii
quam maximás…possunt: the largest groups (as) they are able; quam + superl. = “as X as possible,” possunt makes construction explicit
cógunt: they gather together
3 dē improviso: unexpectedly; “from the unforeseen,” often with preposition
4 nōndum ad eum: part of the abl. absolute from fāmā to perlātā
perlātā: PPP perferō
Titūrī: gen. sg., Quintus Titutius Sabīnus
4 Huic quoque: to this one also; i.e. to Cicero
quod fuit nescere: which was inevitable
5 ut…interciperentur: that…; noun result clause governed by accīdit
causā: for the sake of…; + preceding genitives
6 discēssissent: had gone out; i.e. from the camp, plpf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic
7 His circumventīs: abl. absolute
magnā manū: with a great band; abl. of means with the ablative absolute
8 Nostrī: our (soldiers)
9 concendunt: (and) climb; asyndeton, the lack of conjunctions suggests that the Romans were acting quickly and decisively
aegrē: with difficulty; adv. of aeger
10 aedēptī: having attained; perfect deponent
ple adippiscor
in perpetuum: for ever; “into perpetual (time),” supply neuter acc. tempus
fore: would be; alternative to fūtūrum esse, a fut. inf. in ind. discourse governed by cōnfidēbant, sē is acc. subj.
12 magnā…praemīs: …(to the messengers); abl. absolute; the offer is made to the messengers of the letters
3 sī pertulissent: if (the messengers) had carried (the letters) through (to Caesar); protasis in a past contrary-to-fact condition
obsessīs…viās: abl. absolute causal in force, the viae are likely paths or routes
missī: (the messengers) sent; PPP mittō
14 noctū: at night; ablative as adverb
causā: for the sake of; + preceding genitive
15 incrēdibilī celeritātē: with…; abl. of manner drops “cum” when there is an adjective, here i-stem 3rd declension
quae dēesse operī vidēbantur: (the things) which seemed to be lacking for the work; i.e. whatever seemed to be incomplete
16 perficiuntur: missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject
postērō diē: on…; time when
multō: much…; “by much,” ablative of degree of difference with comparative maiōribus
maiōribus…copīs: ablative absolute
17 (et) fossam: asyndeton
Eādem ratiōne: by the same method
quā (ratiōne) pridē: in which (manner) (they resisted) the day before; i.e. “as on the day before,” relative clause, add ratiōne, resistitur
ab nostrīs resistitur: our men resisted; “it is resisted by our (men),” impers. pass. below
18 hoc idem: this same thing; id-dem, neuter singular nom. subject
fit: 3rd sg. pres. fiō; often passive for faciō
reliquīs…diēbus: in…; abl. time when

### Impersonal Verb Constructions

Impersonal verbs are found in the 3rd sg. and translated with the subject “it.” The passive of an intransitive verb (e.g. ventum est) is often used impersonally with dat. of agent but should be translated actively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accidit</td>
<td>it happens + ut (noun result clause)</td>
<td>18, 20, 28, 32, 48, 50, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constat</td>
<td>it is agreed</td>
<td>18, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fās est</td>
<td>it is right + inf.</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>it happens/is done + ut (noun result clause)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licet</td>
<td>it is allowed + inf.</td>
<td>10, 32, 46, 52, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportet</td>
<td>it is desirable/fitting/necessary + inf.</td>
<td>6, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>it is possible</td>
<td>10, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videtur</td>
<td>it seems +ut (noun result clause)</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsurgitur</td>
<td>they rise (it is arisen)</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porrectum est</td>
<td>they arrived (it was arrived)</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugnārētur</td>
<td>they were fighting (it was fought)</td>
<td>52, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugnātum est</td>
<td>each side fought (it was fought by each side)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistitur</td>
<td>our men resisted (it was resisted by our men)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventum est</td>
<td>they came (it has been come)</td>
<td>16, 38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nulla pars nocturnā temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulnerātīs facultās quiētīs dātur. 6. Quaecumque ad proximā dieī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praecūstae sudēs, magnus murālium pilōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lorīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. 7. Ipse Cicerō cum tenuissimā vallētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sībi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursūs ac vōcibus sībi parcerētur.

Tunc duēs prīncēsque Nerviōrum quī aliquem sērnōnis adītum causamque amīcītiae cum Cicerōne habēbant colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. 2. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorānt:
omnem esse in armīs Galliam; 3. Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrūmque hīberna oppugnārī. 4. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte: Ambiorīgem ostentant fīdēi faciendae causā. 5. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quidquam ab hīs praeisdī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffidēnt; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlīnt: 6. licēre illīs incolūmibus per sē ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velīnt sine metū proficīscī.

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: to bring to, add, 4
aditus, -ās m.: approach, access, entrance, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4
attēxū, -ere, -textū, textum: weave, add on 1
colloquium, -ī m.: conversation, talk, 1
commemorō (1): to call to mind, recollect, 1
comparō (1): to prepare, get ready, provide, 4
concursūs, -ās m.: running together, gathering, 1
contabulō (1): to equip with boarded platforms, 1
crātīs, -is f.: (wicker) frame, fascines, 1
diffidō, -ere, diffisūm: mistrust, despair (dat.), 1
dux, ducīs m./f.: leader, guide, chief, 4
erō (1): to wander, rove, stray, 1
fīdēs, ē f.: faith, honor, 4
incolūmīs, -ē: unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2
institūō, -ērīs m./f.: establishe, 3
inveterāscō (1): to become old, 1
labor, -ōris m.: labor, hardship, task, 1
lorīca, -ae f.: parapet, breastwork, 1
metus, -ās m.: dread, fear, 2
mūrālis, -ē: of a wall, mural, 1
noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4
noctūrūnus, -a, -um: nocturnal, nightly, 3
nōlō, nolle, nolūī: to refuse, be unwilling, 1
ostentō (1): show (off), display, point out, 1
parcō, -ere, pepercī: to spare, refrain (dat), 2
pilum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3
pinna, -ae f.: battlement on wall; feather, 1
potestās, -tātīs f.: power, ability, capacity, 3
praesidium, -īi n.: guard, protection, assistance, 2
praēstūs, -a, -um: burned at the end, 1
prīnceps, -cipīs m./f.: chief, leader, 4
quīcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quiēs, quiētīs f.: rest, repose, sleep, 2
quisquām, quidquām: anyone, anything? 2
recūsō (1): to object to, refuse, reject, 1
sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3
sudīs, -īs: stake, spike, 1
tenuis, -ē: thin, slender, 1
tunc: then, at that time, 1
ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3
vallētūdo, -dinīs f.: state of health, health, 1
vōx, vōcis, -ī: voice; utterance, word, 4
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3
1 nocturnī temporis: partitive genitive
   ad labōrem: for work; expressing purpose it modifies the subject not the verb: the line reads “no part of the night time (devoted) for work is interrupted” whereas we would prefer “no part of the night time is interrupted from work”
   aegrīs: to the sick; dat. indirect object
2 vulnerātīs: dat. indirect object
   quiētīs: for...; dative of purpose; double dat.
   quaecumque...opus sunt: whatsoever is the work (to be done); or “whatsoever is the need” opus est, “there is a need,” often governs a dat. of interest and abl. of the object wanted; less frequently, as here, there is a subject and opus is the predicate
   proximiō diē: gen. sg.
3 noctū: at night; abl. as adverb
4 contabulantur: are equipped with boarded platforms; the wooden towers are multi-storied with wood floors
5 Ipse Cicero: nom. subj. within the cum-clause
   cum...esset: although he was; impf. subjunctive in a cum-clause which is concessive in force
   tenuissimā valētūdine: of very weak health; abl. of quality, predicate as esset
6 nē...quidem: not even; nē quidem emphasizes the intervening word
   ad quīētum: for...; ad + acc. expresses purpose
   ut...cōgerētur: so that he was compelled; impf. subj. in a result clause
   ultrō: voluntarily
7 parcere: governs a dative
8 aliquem...adītum: some (right of) entry into conversation; the Nervii had previously established a rapport with the Romans that entitled them to approach and speak
9 causamque amīcitiae: reason for friendship
   sēsē velle: that they are willing; i.e. Nervii, velle is a pres. inf. vōlō, colloquī is a deponent complementary infinitive
10 factā potestātē: permission having been given; “opportunity having been made,” idiom
   ēgerat: had discussed; “had conducted”
11 trānsīsse: pf. inf. trāscēō, Germānōs acc. subj.
12 oppugnārī: are being assaulted; pres. pass., hiberna, “winter-quarters” is acc. subject
   Adunt: they add; i.e. “they say in addition”
13 Ambiorīgem ostentant: they point to Ambiorīx
   fīdēi faciēndī: of forming trust; gen. sg.
   gerundive + noun; gerund-gerundive flip
   eōs: that they; i.e. the Romans, acc. subject
14 quidquam...praesidī: any protection;
   “anything of protection,” partitive gen.
   spērent: hoped; impf. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse
   qui...diffidant: pres. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse
   sēsē hoc esse...animō: that they are of this mind toward...; i.e. the Nervii, abl. of quality as predicate
15 in: toward...
   ut...recūset...nōlīnt: result clause, present subjunctive recūsō, nōlō
   nihil nisi hiberna: nothing except winter-quarters; the Nervii claim to be willing to be friends (see “amīcitiae” above) but will not allow the Romans to maintain a military camp in the territory of the Nervii
16 licēre: that it is allowed for those...; indirect disc., the infinitive represents an impersonal verb with governs a dat. of interest
17 per sē: by themselves
   discēdere...proficīscī: infinitives, active and deponent, governed by licēre
   quāscumque in partēs...velīnt: in whatever directions they want/would want; pres. subj. volō, in a relative clause of characteristic

Indicative Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Present (Pres., Pres.)</th>
<th>Future More Vivid (fut. (pf.), fut.)</th>
<th>Simple Past (past, past)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dixī “sī credis, errās.”</td>
<td>dixī “sī credēs/credideris, errābis.”</td>
<td>dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I said, “if you believe this, you are wrong”</td>
<td>I said, “if you believe this, you will be wrong”</td>
<td>I said, “if you believed this, you were wrong”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre</td>
<td>dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāturum esse</td>
<td>dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.</td>
<td>I said that, if you believed this, you would be wrong.</td>
<td>I said that, if you (had) believed this, you had been...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for more, see p. 84
41.7 Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse consuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: 8. sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre útantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, imperātūrōs.

42.1 Ab hac spē repulsi Nervī Vallō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hīberna cingunt. 2. Haec et superiōrum annōrum consuētūdine ab nōbīs cognōverant et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab eīs dōcēbantur; 3. sed nūllā ferramentōrum copiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīisque terram exhaŭrīre nitēbantur. 4. Quā quidem ex rē homīnum multitūdō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīliōn pedum XV in circuitū mūnītīōnem perfīcērunt 5. reliquiōs diēbus turres ad altitūdinem vallī, falcēs testūdīnēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43.1 Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coērtō ventō, ferventēs fusilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iācere coepērunt. 2. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnītūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt.
The Nervii Continue the Siege and Set Fire to Cicero’s Camp

nullīs... copia (since there was... there being)

The text contains a mixture of Latin and English, discussing the Nervii and their siege tactics against Cicero’s camp.

The text mentions the use of fossae and caespae, as well as the capture of prisoners and the setting of fires.

The Nervii had learned their siege strategies from the Romans, and their tactics included the use of fossae and caespae to disrupt Cicero’s defenses.

The Nervii would have been on the defensive, with Cicero on the offensive, as the Romans had been trained in sieges and battles.

The text also mentions the capture of Septimius, a Roman general, and the possibility of a mutiny among the Nervii’s soldiers.

The Nervii were not to be underestimated, as they were a formidable force, and Cicero and his army had to be prepared for any unexpected attacks.

Overall, the text provides insight into the military strategies and tactics of the Roman and Nervii forces during this period of history.
Hostēs maximō clamōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turriēs testudinēsque agere et scalīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 4. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortūnās consēfragrāre intellegērent, nōn modo démigrāndī causā dē vallō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs âcērimē fortissimēque pugnārent. 5. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimīs fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numeros hostium vulnerātur atque interficerunt, ut sōrunt. 6. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turriē adactā et contingente vāllum tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs removērunt, nūtū vocibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. 7. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 
adīgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive to, force to, 
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 
ascendō, -ere, -ā, -ānus: ascend, mount 
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 
centurio, -īonis m.: centurion, 
clāmor, clāmoris m.: shout, cry, 
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 
cōnflagrō (1): be on fire, be consumed, 
constīpō (1): to crowd together in, stuff, 
contingē, -ere, tīgī, tactum: touch, border, 
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, die, 
dēmigrō (1): to emigrate, depart, 
dēturbō (1): dislodge, drive off, 
ēventus, -ūs m.: consequence, result, issue, 
explorō (1): explore, search; gain, 
flamma, ae f.: flame, 
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 
iam: now, already, soon, 
intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctum: understand, 
introēō, -ire, īī, -ītum: go into, enter, 
lapis, lapidis m.: stone, 
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 
nēmō, nullius, nēminī, -em, nūllō: no one, 
nūtus, -ūs m.: a nod, 
paene: almost, nearly, 
parīō, -ere, peperī, partum: produce, bear, 
praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 
prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus: step forward, 
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 
quīsquam, quīdquam: anyone, anything? 
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go back, 
recessus, -ūs m.: retreat, recess, 
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look back to, 
sclāra, -ae f.: ladder; flight of stairs, stairs, 
sicūt: just as, so as, as if, 
stō, -āre, stefi, stātum: stand still, stop, 
succēdō, -ere, -di, censum: to set fire under, 
testūdo, -tūdinis f.: tortoise, 
torrēō, -ēre, -ruī, tostum: burn, parch, 
ultimīmus, -a, -um: farthest, extreme, last, 
vōcō (1): call, name, address, summon, 
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 
vulnerō (1): wound, injure,
Cicero’s Men Resist Amid the Flames

1 maximō clāmōre: with a very loud shout; abl. of manner, cum is dropped with the noun is modified by an adjective
sūcūt: as if...
partā...atque explorātā: produced and confirmed; PPP in an ablative absolute; pariō is the verb “to give birth” and explorō, in addition to the meaning “to search out” means “fixed,” “established” or “confirmed” in Caesar

2 agere: to drive forward
mīlitum: of (our) soldiers; i.e. the Romans

3 ea praesentia animī: and such was their presence of mind; i.e. discipline and focus
ut...nōn modo...dēcēderet, sed...respiceret...pugnārent: (so) that...; result clause; impf. subjunctives in secondary sequence
cum...: although...; cum-clause is concessive

4 tōrrērentur...pремerentur: were being scorched and...were being overwhelmed; impf. subj. in the same cum-clause
sua: their; reflexive adjective

5 impedimenta atque...fortūnās: acc. subj. of cōnflagrāre, ind. disc. governed by intellegēre
fortūnās: personal items
nōn modo...sed: not only...but (also)

6 dēmigrāndi causā: for the sake of...; gen. sg. gerund dēmigrō
nē...quidem: not even; this construction emphasizes the intervening word, in this case respiceret, which is part of the result clause that started with ut in line 3

7 ācerrimē fortissimēquē: superlative adverbs

8 nostris: for our (men); dat. of interest
longē: far, by far; adverb
gravissimus: most grievous; pred. adjective
hunc...ēventum, ut: this result, (namely) that...; ut introduces a noun result clause in apposition to ēventum
ēō diē: on this day; ēō is a demonstrative

9 ut...constipāverant...dabant: since...; ut + indicative, “as” is causal in force
sub: at the foot of...; “beneath”

10 prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant: the last (soldiers) were not giving (a means for) retreat to the first; the rows of soldiers were crowded together on the battle line so that the soldiers on the front were pushed by those behind and could not retreat
paulum: a little; adverbial acc.

11 intermissā flammā: abl. absolute
quōdam locō: in a certain place; abl. place where; or “to...” dative with compound verb

turrī adāctā et contingēntēs: abl. abs., turrī is fem. i-stem abl.; PPP adigō; pres. pple contingō; the turri is an enemy’s tower

12 tertiae cohortis: gen. sg. modifies centuriónēs
ex eō...locō: from this place; demonstrative
quō: in which (place); abl. of place where

13 suōsque omnēs: all their men; acc. d.o.
nūtū vocibusque: with a nod and words; abl. of means
sī...vellent: if they wished; ind. discourse, impf. subjunctive; in direct discourse a pres. indicative: “if you wish to enter, (enter)!”

14 quōrum...nēmō: none of whom; partitive gen.
prōredī: present deponent inf., prōredīr
ausus est: dared; pf. deponent, audēō is a semi-deponent verb, otherwise active, the perfect tenses are deponent

ex omnē parte: from every direction

15 dēturbātī (sunt): (the enemy) was dislodged; pf. passive, add “sunt” parallel with succēnsa
turrīs: nom. sg. feminine

Purpose Constructions

There are a variety of ways to express purpose in Caesar’s Commentaries. Notice how Caesar uses purpose clauses (adverbial and relative) in early books and other constructions in later ones. The dat. of purpose is often used with sum or with dat. interest in a double dative construction.

ut/nē + subj.  ut/nē audīret  so that he might (not) hear... pp. 4, 6, 8, 10, 46, 70
qui + subj.  quī audīret  who should hear... pp. 10
ad + gerund  ad haec audiendum  for hearing... pp. 10, 18
ad + noun + gerundive  ad haec audienda  for these things to be heard pp. 2-8, 10, 18-20, 24
causā + gerund  audiēndī causā  for the (sake of) hearing... pp. 28, 40, 62
causā + gerundive  audiēndī huius causā  for the sake of this to be heard pp. 20, 58, 68
causā + accusative supine  auditum  to hear... pp. 22, 38, 52
dative of purpose  salūtī  for safety p.12, 18-20, 38-44, 52, 64-6

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2
ambo: both, two together, 1
anterō, -ferre, -tuli: prefer, carry before, 2
appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat), 3
auxilium, -i n.: help, aid, assistance, 3
avertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 1
balteus, -i m.: belt, baldric; girdle, 1
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
certāmen, -minis n.: contest, conflict, 1
circumsistō, -ere, -stēfī: to surround, 2
comminus: hand to hand, in close combat, 1
concīdō, -ere, -cidī, -casum: to fall, 1
contertus, -a, um: crowded together, dense, 3
cōnfestim: immediately, 4
contendō, -ere, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4
contentio, -iōnis f.: struggle, effort, 1
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 1
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 2
defigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum: fasten, stick fast, 1
deficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: throw down 2
dexter, -tera, -terum: right, the right hand, 1
diiūdicō (1): judge, decide (by fighting), 1
dubītō (1): waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 1
edūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
examinō (1): deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2
existimātio, -iōnis f.: judgment, opinion, 1
expectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
extrā: outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 1
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
gladius, -i m.: sword, 3
immittō, -ere, -misī, -missum: launch into, 1
impedītus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3
incolumīs, -e: unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2
infērus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3
inimīcīs, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4
inquam: say, 4
instō, -āre, -stītī, press on, take a position, 1
intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3
irruptō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 1
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 2
labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2
laus, laudīs f.: praise, adulation, 1
mediocris, -e: moderate, ordinary, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3
occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus: kill, cut down 4
percutiō, -ere, -cussī, cussum: strike hard, 1
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4
pīlum, -ī n.: pila, javelin, 3
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 3
prōcūrrō, -ere, currī, cursum: run forward, 2
prōpellō, -ere, pellī, -pulsūm: drive forward or push away, 3
prōtegō, -ere, texī, tectum: to cover over, 1
quīnam quae nam quod nam: which, what, 1
regredior, -ī, regressus: step or go back 1
rursus: again, backward, back, 4
scātum, -ī m.: shield, 2
sic: thus, in this way, 3
simultās, -tātis f.: clash, feud, rivalry, 1
spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4
subvenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come up to, aid, relieve, 2
sucurrō, -ere: run under, undergo, occur, 1
Titūs, -ī m.: Titus, 4
trāciō, -icēre, -īcē, -ictum: pierce, cast across, 2
transfigūrō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum: pierce, thrust, 1
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 1
universus, -a, -um: all together, whole, 3
uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 2
vāgīna, -ae f.: sheath, scabbard, 1
vercor, -ērī, -itus sum: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3
verūtum, -ī n.: javelin, 2
vir, virī m.: man, 4

1 Erant: there were...
primīs ordinibus: the front ranks; in battle at regular intervals the front row was relieved by the second row and slipped to the rear; Pullo and Vorenus are about take over the first row

3 quīnam anteferrētur: who was to be preferred; “who was better,” an ind. question in apposition to contrōversiās, likely impf. deliberative subj.

omnibusque annīs: every year; abl. time when
dē locīs summis: concerning the highest positions; i.e. military promotions and honors

4 simulātībus: in...; abl. of respect
ācerrimē: superlative adverb

ad: near

5 Quid: Why?...
pugnārētur: they were fighting; “it was fought (by them),” an impersonal impf. passive

Vorēne: Vorenus; vocative direct address
quem locum: what (better) place; i.e. “what better opportunity” relative adjective

6 tuae probandae virtūtis: of proving your valor; “of your valor going to be proven,” a gerundive modifying virtūtis; through a gerundive gerundive flip a gerund with virtūtis as object

haec: these things; acc. obj. of plpf. subj. dīcō; Pullo is the subject of all the following verbs

quaque pars...est visa: and what(ever) side seemed...; videor, here pf. pass. is translated as the linking verb “seems,” missing antecedent is the object of irruptum

8 cōnfertissima: superlative pred. adj. governed by visa est and modifying the feminine sg. pars
nē...quidem: not even...; this construction emphasizes the intervening word

vallō: within the wall; abl. place where

9 veritus: having come to fear...; pf. dep. pple

omnia existimātiōnēm: object of veritus

mediocrī spatīo relictō: a usual interval (of time) having been forsaken; i.e. a short time, having intervened; abl. absolute, i-stem abl.

10 in hostēs: against the enemy
ūnum: one (enemy soldier)

11 prōcurrentem: pres. pple. modifies ūnum

quaō percussō et examinātō: this one...; abl. abs. with PPP percūtiō, examināō; a relative where English prefers a demonstrative

hunc: this one; hunc refers to the same as quō

12 regrediendī: gerund, gen. sg. regredior

13 Pulloī: Pullo’s; dat. poss. or dat. of interest
hic casus: this event; the scabbard is turned in such a way that it is difficult to draw a sword

14 gladiōm ēdūcere cōnāntī: for the one trying...; pres. pple cōnōr

15 Īīlī, laborāntī: dat. objects of compound verbs

17 illum occīsum (esse): that that one was killed

18 ūnō interfectō: abl. absolute
cupidīus: comparative adverb, cupidus

19 īnstat: presses on; “takes a stand”
dēiectus: having slipped onto a lower ground

20 īnstat: presses on; “takes a stand”
dēiectus: having slipped onto a lower ground

21 sēsē...recipiunt: retreat; common idiom

22 utrumque versāvit: engaged in both men

23 uter utrī: each one to the other; dat. sg.

vīrūtē: in valor; abl. of respect

anteferrēndus: to be preferred; “going/worthy to be preferred” gerundive, a predicate of the linking verb vidērētur, “seemed” cf. line 3
45.1 Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem defensōrum pervēnerat, tantō crebrīōres litterae nūntiāque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in conspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necātur. 2. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā āmā obsidioōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. 3. Hic servō spē libertātēs magnīisque persuādēt praemīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 4. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versatūs ad Caesarem pervenit. 5. Ab eō dē periculōs Cicerōnīs legiōnīsque cognōscitur.

46.1 Caesar, acceptūs litterīs, hōrā circiter XI diēī statīm nūntium in Bellovācis ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō milia passuum XXV; 2. iūbet mediā nocte legiōnem proficiscē celeriterque ad sē venīre. 3. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium ūnēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. 4. Scribit Labiēnō, sī reī publicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad ūnēs Nerviōrum veniāt. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equītēs circiter quadrīgenterōs ex prōximīs hibernīs colligit.
Quantō...gravior...tanto crēbrīōres: the more grievous...the more frequent; “by as much...by so much,” correlatives, ablative of the degree of difference with comparative adjective

in diēs: daily
maximē: especially; “very greatly”
magnā...vulneribus: ablative absolute

pervēnerat: had arrived at; rēs is subject
nuntīi: messengers
quōrum pars: some of which (messengers); partitive gen.,
dēprehēnsa: taken; modifies fem. sg. pars
Erat: there was
intus: within; i.e. within Cicero’s camp
nōmine: by name; “in name,” abl. of respect
locō...honestō: in an honorable station; status
eī: to him; i.e. to Cicero, dat. sg.
praestiterat: had shown, had performed
Hic: this one; i.e. Vertico
servō: slave; dat. i.o. of persuādeō
spē, praeāmisī: abl. means
ult...déferat: that...; ind. command with present subj. governed by persuādet
ille: that one; i.e. the slave
hās: these; fem. pl. antecedent litterae
Gallus...versātus: as a Gaul engaged...
ab eō: by him; by the slave, abl. of agent

cognōscitur: he learned; “it is known by him”
acceptīs litterīs: abl. absolute
hōrā...XI: at around the 11th hour; time when, approximately 5 p.m.
dīēt: partitive genitive
cuius: gen. relative pronoun quī, quae, quod
aberant ab eō: were...away from him; i.e.

from Caesar

milia passuum XXV: 25 miles; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space
mediā nocte: abl. of time when
proficisī: pres. deponent inf.
cum nuntīō: with the messenger; or “with (the arrival of) the message”
Alterum: another; modifies lēgātum
ut...adducat: that...; ind. command with pres. subj.
finēs: territory
quā: where
sī...iter faciendum (esse): that a journey had to be made by him; “a journey was going to be made by him” ind. discourse, a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) with dat. of agent expressing necessity or obligation
Labiēnō: dat. i.o.
ihilum...potest: if; impf. subj. possum
rei públicae commodō: for the interest of the republic; dat. purpose or, if reī is dat. not gen., double dative (dat. of interest & dat. purpose)
(ut) cum legiōne veniatur: that...; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by scribit
finēs: territory

exercītūs: gen. sg.
paulō: a little; “by a little,” abl. degree of difference with comparative longius
longius: farther; comparative adverb

exspectandam (esse): must be waited for; “is going to be waited for,” passive periphrastic (gerundive + esse) expresses obligation or necessity; add esse, in indirect disc. governed by putat; fem. sg. partem is acc. subject

Compound Verbs: the Importance of Prefixes

Notice how the spelling of many prefixes, especially ad- and con-, change through assimilation and assume the consonant at the begins of the verb. Compounds often govern a dative instead of an accusative object.

a/ab: away from mittō, -ere: send, 20
ad: to, toward āmittō: lose, let go away, 2
con: together with admissō: admit, allow, 2
dē-: from, down from committō: begin, entrust, 4
dēmīttō: send down, sink, 1
dis: different directions dīmittō: send away, 3
ē/ex: out from ēmittō: send off, 1
in: in, on, into immittō: launch into, 1
inter: between intermīttō: interrupt, leave off, 5
per: through permīttō: let through, allow, 0
praē: before, ahead praemittō: send ahead, 2
pro: forth, in advance prōmissō: send forth, undertake, 0
re: back, again remittō: send back, 4
sub: (up from) under submittō: send up, 1
cēdō, ere: withdraw, move, 2
accēdō: approach, 5
concēdō: withdraw, yield, 2
dēcēdō: depart, withdraw, 4
discēdō: go away, depart, 9
excedō: go out, depart, 3
incēdō: walk, march, 0
intercēdō: come between, 1
praecēdō: surpass, go ahead, 1
prōcēdō: go forth, 3
recēdō: go back, withdraw, 1
succeđō: go up, approach, 3
47.1 Hōrā circiter tertīā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō
dīē milia passuum XX procēdit. 2. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit
legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercītūs, obsidēs cīvitātum,
litterās publicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemīs causā
dēvexerat relinquebat. 3. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus
in itinere cum legiōne occurrīt. 4. Labiēnus, interīūs Sabīnī et caede
cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Treverōrum cōpiāe vēnissent,
veritus, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectī, ut hostium
impetum sustinēre posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret,
litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ëductūrus
esse; rem gestam in Eburiōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs
pedītūsque cōpiās Treverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs
cōnsēdisse.

antecursor, -ōris m.: scout, advanced guard, 1
attribuō, -ere, -uī, -utum: allot, assign to, add, 1
caedes, caedis f.: murder, slaughter, killing 2
consideō, -ère, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 2
dēvehō, -ere, -vēxi, -vectum: carry away, 1
doceō, -ère, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 4
dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus: lead out, 3
efferō, -ferre, -fērī, -fectum: raise, lift up 4
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3
hiems, hiemīs f.: winter, storm, 4
hora, -ae f.: hour, 4
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7
interitus, -ūs m.: destruction, annihilation, 1
ita: so, thus, 7
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3
occurrō, -ere: run to meet, attack, 2
pedītātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3
perscrībō, -ere, -scripsī: describe thoroughly, 1
praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum: set (acc) over (dat),
put (acc) in charge over (dat), 2
praesertim: especially, particularly, 2
prōcēdo, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 3
recens, recentis adj.: new, fresh, recent, 1
remittō, -ere, -mišī, -missum: send back, 4
Samarobrīva, -ae f.: Samarobriva, 2
sciō, -ire, -iū (īī), -itus: know (how), 2
similis, simile: similar to, like (dat.), 1
tolerō (1): endure, sustain, bear, support, 1
Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
1 Hōrā...tertīā: at...; abl. of time when
ab ante turcisōrībus: abl. of agent
certior factus: having been informed; “having been made more certain,” a common idiom in Caesar, certior is a comparative adj., here a predicate of PPP of faciō
2 eō die: on that day; time when, demonstrative
milia passuum XX: for 20 miles; “twenty thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space
praeficit: put (acc) in charge over (dat.)
3 quod: because...
4 quod...dēverat: which...; relative pronoun, frumentum is the antecedent
eō: to there; “to that place,” adverb
tolerandae hiemis: gerund-gerundive flip, translate the gerundive as a gerund and gen.
hiemis as an acc. object of tolerandae; the entire construction is an obj. of the preposition causa
5 ut: as; ut + indicative, as often “as” or “when”
imperātum erat: it...; impersonal plpf. pass.
multum: much; inner acc. or adverbial acc.
6 interītū...cognītā: abl. absolute
7 cum...vēnisset: when...; plpf. subjunctive
cōpiāe: troops; modified by omnēs
8 verītus...ut...posset: having begun to fear that he would not be able; imperative pf. dep. pple

Deponent Verbs in the Readings
adgrediōr, -ī, aggressum sum: attack, 1
egrediōr, -ī, -gressum: go out, disembark, 5
regredior, -ī, -gressum: step or go back 1
adipiscor, -ī, adepitum: get, obtain, reach, 1
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitratium: to judge, 10
auxiliōr, -ārī, auxiliatūm: to help, assist, 1
confiteor, -ērī, -fessum: admit, reveal, 1
cōnōr, cōnārī, cōnātum: to try, 6
cunctor, -ārī, -ātum: to delay, hesitate 1
frūmentor, -ārī: to forage, fetch corn, 1
hortor, -ārī, hortatūm: encourage, urge, 2
adhortor, -ārī, -ātum: encourage, urge on, 1
cohortor, -ārī, cohortatūm: encourage, incite, 3
lábor, lábī, lapsum: glide, slide, slip, 1
loquor, -ī, locutum: speak, say, 2
colloquor, -quī, -locutūm: to converse, 4
medeōr, -ērī: heal, cure; assist, alleviate, 1
mercōr, -ārī, mercātum: to trade, traffic, 1
moderōr, -ārī, -ātum: restrain, regulate, 1
mollor, -īrī, mollitūm: set into motion, stir, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātum: delay, linger; detain, 3
nanciscor, nancisciā, nactum: obtain, meet, 1
nascor, nasci, nātum: be born, grow, 3
nītor, nīsī, nīsus sum: to struggle, lean on, 1
contestor, -ārī, -ātum: to call as witness, 1
oriōr, -īrī, oritum: arise, rise, spring, 3
adoriōr, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
coōrīr, -īrī, coōrtum: arise, break out, 2
patior, -ī, passum: suffer, endure; allow, 2
pollicecor, -cērī, -citum: promise, offer, 2
potior, -īrī, -ītum: gain, win (abl.), 2
proelior, -ārī, -ātum: to give battle, fight, 1
profisciscor, -ī, -fessum: set out, depart, 23
proficiscor, -ērī, -fessum: profess, declare, 1
prosequor, sequī, secūtum: follow, pursue 1
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 1
sequor, -ī, secūtum: follow, pursue, 4
consequor, -ī, secūtum: follow; pursue 1
exsequor, sequi, secūtum: follow/carry out 1
insequor, -sequī, -secūtum: follow, ensue, 1
subsequor, -ī, secūtum: follow after, behind 7
 suspicior, -ārī, suspicātum: to suspect, 3
ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 1
ūtor, -ī, úsus sum: use, employ (abl.), 5
vagor, -ārī, -ātum: wander, roam to and fro, 1
vereor, -ērī, -ītum: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

Caesar Sends Orders to Crassus and Labienus
48.1 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opinione trium legiōnūm dēiectus ad 
duās redierat, tamen īnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat. 
Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerīvōrum fīnēs. 2. Ibi ex captīvīs cognoscit, quae 
apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sīt. 3. Tum cuidam ex 
equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam 
dēferat. 4. Hanc Graecīs conscriptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistolā, 
nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. 5. Śi adīre non possit, monet ut 
trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum delicātā intrā mūniūnīnem castrōrum 
abiciat. 6. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; 
hortātur ut pristīnām virtūtem retineat. 7. Gallus pēriculum veritus, ut erat 
praecceptum, trāgulam mittit. 8. Haec cāsu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs 
bīduō animadversa tertīō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōspicitur, dempta ad 
Cicerōnem dēfertur. 9. Ille perlectam in conventū militia recitāt 
maximāque omnēs laetitīā adficīt. 10. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procūl 
vīdebantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnūm expulīt.
Cicero Sends Word of his Arrival to Cicero

1. cōnsilīō…probātō: abl. absolute
   etsī: even if…; i.e. although
   opinīōne: from the hope for…; “from the thought,” abl. of separation; Caesar had hoped for three legions but received only two
   dēiectus: disappointed; i.e. dejected, dispirited

2. duās: duās legiōnēs
   redierat: plpf. redeō
   ūnum…auxilium: a single source

3. magnīs itineribus: in long marches; i.e. forced marches; 25-30 miles per day
   fīnēs: borders
   quae…gerantur: what (things) are carried on; ind. question with pres. subjunctive

4. apud Cicerōnem: in Cicero’s camp
   quantō in…: in how great…; cf. p. 68, (V.47.4)
   ind. question with pres. subj. of sum
   cuisdam: a certain…; cui-dam, dat. indirect obj. quidam of persuaēō; pres. subj. dēferō

5. uī…dēferat: that…; uī is an alternative to ut, here in an indirect command governed by persuaēō; pres. subj. dēferō

6. hanc: this (letter)
   Graecīs…litterīs: with Greek letters; in Greek or perhaps Latin in Greek script
   nē…cognōscantur: that…may not…; negative purpose clause; pres. subj. in primary sequence

7. possīt: he is able; a subordinate clause in ind. discourse, replacing indicative with pres. subj.
   ut…abiciat: that…; ind. command governed by monet; pres. subj. in primary sequence

8. āmentum: a leather loop on a javelin that allows for better aim and distance when the javelin is thrown

9. sē…adfore: that he will be present…; adfore is an alternative for adfutūrum esse, fut. inf. of adsum
   profectum: PPP proficiscor

10. uī…restitē: that…; ind. command
    veritus: having begun to fear; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereō governs perīcēlum as object
    uī erat praeceptum: as it had been instructed; ut + indicative

11. mittī: launches; i.e. throws
    haec: this (javelin); supply nom. sg. trāgula
    cāsū: by chance
    ab nostrīs: by our (men); abl. agent

12. bīduō: in…; abl. time when or within
    animadversa: PPP modifying haec (trāgula)
    tertīō diē: abl. time when

13. perlectam (epīstulam)…recitāt: that one recites the letter, once read through,…;
    English prefers two main verbs where Latin often prefers to make the first of two actions into a PPP: “that one read through the letter and then recited it…”

14. adfectī: affects (acc) with (abl.); abl. means

15. quae rēs: a matter which…; quae modifies fem. sg. rēs, the antecedent of the relative clause, in apposition to fūmī (or the entire clause)

The Remainder of Book V

Cicero and his camp are hopeful when they see the fires as a sign of Caesar’s approach. Confronted with 60,000 Gauls, Caesar forms a camp. After a brief skirmish, he pretends to retreat into his fortifications, and when the Gauls follow him, he orders his cavalry and then his foot soldiers to rush out of the gates and attack the enemy. The Gauls are taken by surprise, and those who are not immediately killed flee into the nearby swamps and forests.

Caesar hastens to Cicero’s camp, where he learns that nine of every ten soldiers has been wounded in the siege. Caesar praises both Cicero and the legion and informs Cicero about the fate of Sabinus and Cotta’s legion and in particular the recklessness of Sabinus.

When Labienus, encamped 60 miles away, learns of Caesar’s victory, Indutiomarus, leader of the Treveri, initially decides to stop preparations to attack Labienus and to withdraw. But as other Gauls learn about Sabinus’ defeat and begin to make preparations to fight, Indutiomarus returns with a much larger force. With the aid of cavalry, Labienus is able to surprise the Gauls and kill Indutiomarus. After this episode the Gauls return to their homes, and the uprising comes to an end.
### Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Declension</th>
<th>2nd Declension (m.)</th>
<th>2nd Declension (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. copia</td>
<td>copiae</td>
<td>legatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. copiae</td>
<td>copiārum</td>
<td>legatī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. copiae</td>
<td>copiīs</td>
<td>legatō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. copiam</td>
<td>copiās</td>
<td>legatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. copiā</td>
<td>copiīs</td>
<td>legatōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2nd Declension (n.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension (m/f)</th>
<th>3rd Declension (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. mīles</td>
<td>mīlites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mīlitīs</td>
<td>mīlitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mīlitī</td>
<td>mīlitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mīlītem</td>
<td>mīlītēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mīlite</td>
<td>mīlitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4th Declension (m/f)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4th Declension (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. manūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. manūi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. manum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. manū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5th Declension (m/f)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5th Declension (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Selected Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>to/for her</td>
<td>with/from her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>to/for it</td>
<td>with/from it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*is, ea, id is a demonstrative and in Caesar is often translated as “this/that” in the singular and “these/those” in the plural.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quī</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>cuīs</td>
<td>quām</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuīs</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quōd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>cuīs</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quām</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>cuīs</td>
<td>quām</td>
<td>quām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quius</td>
<td>quiūs</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>cuīs</td>
<td>quām</td>
<td>quām</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*who, which, that, whose, of whom/which, to whom/which, whom, which, that, by/with/from whom/which*
### Synopsis: Second Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ille</th>
<th>illa</th>
<th>illud</th>
<th>that</th>
<th>hic</th>
<th>haec</th>
<th>hoc</th>
<th>this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>of that</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>of this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>to/for that</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>to/for this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>with/from that</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>b/w/f this</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adjectives and Adverbs

#### Decl. | Positive | Comparative | Superlative
---|---|---|---
1st/2nd | altus, -a, -um | altior, altius | altissimus, -a, -um

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl.</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>fortis, forte</td>
<td>fortior, fortius</td>
<td>fortissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st/2nd</td>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reflexive pronoun</th>
<th>possessive reflexive adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>suus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suī</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sībi</td>
<td>suō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē</td>
<td>suum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē</td>
<td>suō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus, -a, -um</td>
<td>altior, altius</td>
<td>altissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st/2nd</th>
<th>altē</th>
<th>altius</th>
<th>altissimē</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st/2nd</td>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus, -a, -um</td>
<td>altior, altius</td>
<td>altissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>maior, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altē</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus</td>
<td>---, plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Synopsis: First Conjugation

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>translation</th>
<th>passive</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amō amāmus</td>
<td>I love</td>
<td>amor amāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amās amātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāris amāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amat amant</td>
<td></td>
<td>amātūr amantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>amābam amābāmus</td>
<td><em>I was loving</em></td>
<td>amābar amābāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābās amābātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amābāris amābāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābat amābant</td>
<td></td>
<td>amābātūr amābantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amābō amābīmus</td>
<td><em>I will love</em></td>
<td>amābor amābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābis amābitis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāberis amābiminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābit amābunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>amābitūr amābuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amāvī amāvīmus</td>
<td><em>I have loved</em></td>
<td>amāta sum amātae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvistī amāvistis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amātae estis amātae sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvit amāvērunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>amātae est amātae sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>amāveram amāverāmus</td>
<td><em>I had loved</em></td>
<td>amāta eram amātae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverās amāverātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta erās amātae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverat amāverant</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta erat amātae erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf</td>
<td>amāverō amāverimus</td>
<td><em>I will have loved</em></td>
<td>amāta erō amātae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāveris amāveritis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta eris amātae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverit amāverint</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta erit amātae erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amem amēmus</td>
<td>same as</td>
<td>amer amēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amēs amētis</td>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>amēris amēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amet ament</td>
<td></td>
<td>amētūr amentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>amārem amārēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>amārer amārēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amārēs amārētis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāreris amārēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāret amārent</td>
<td></td>
<td>amārettur amārentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amāverim amāverīmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta sim amātae simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverīs amāverītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta sīs amātae sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāverit amāverint</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta sit amātae sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>amāvissem amāvisśēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta essem amātae essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvissēs amāvissētis</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta essēs amātae essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāvissēt amāvissent</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāta esset amātae essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amā amāte</td>
<td>love!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participle</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amāns (gen. amantis)</td>
<td>loving</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to love</td>
<td>amandus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>to love</td>
<td>amārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amāvisse</td>
<td>to have loved</td>
<td>amātum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrum esse</td>
<td>to be going to love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>teneō</td>
<td>I hold</td>
<td>teneō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenet</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>tenēbam</td>
<td>I was holding</td>
<td>tenēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbat</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>tenēbō</td>
<td>I will hold</td>
<td>tenēbō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbit</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenēbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tenui</td>
<td>I have held</td>
<td>tenui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuit</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>tenueram</td>
<td>I had held</td>
<td>tenueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>tenuerō</td>
<td>I will have held</td>
<td>tenuerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>teneam</td>
<td>same as</td>
<td>teneam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teneāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>teneāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teneās</td>
<td></td>
<td>teneās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teneat</td>
<td></td>
<td>teneat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>tenērem</td>
<td>tenēremus</td>
<td>tenērem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenērēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenērēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenērēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenērēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenērent</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenērent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tenuerim</td>
<td>tenuerimus</td>
<td>tenuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>tenuissem</td>
<td>tenuissēmus</td>
<td>tenuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuisse</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenuisset</td>
<td></td>
<td>tenuisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>hold!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tenē</td>
<td>tenēte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participle</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>tenēns (gen. tenentis)</td>
<td>holding</td>
<td>tentus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tentūris, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to hold</td>
<td>tenendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>tentūrum esse</td>
<td>to be going to hold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>tenère</td>
<td>to hold</td>
<td>tenērī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tenuisse</td>
<td>to have held</td>
<td>tentum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>tentūrum esse</td>
<td>to be going to hold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Synopsis: Third Conjugation

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>translation</th>
<th>passive</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>I lead</td>
<td>dūcor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcis</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcitum</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>dūcēbam</td>
<td>I was leading</td>
<td>dūcēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbat</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>I will lead</td>
<td>dūcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcītur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcītum</td>
<td></td>
<td>dūcītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>dūxī</td>
<td>I have led</td>
<td>ducta sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxistī</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxistis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>dūxeram</td>
<td>I had led</td>
<td>ducta eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerant</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.. Pf.</td>
<td>dūxerō</td>
<td>I will have led</td>
<td>ducta erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūxerint</td>
<td></td>
<td>ductae erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>same as indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>dūca (same as indicative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcāmus</td>
<td>ducta sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcātis</td>
<td>ductae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcant</td>
<td>ductae estis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Impf.  | dūcerem   | dūcēmus  | dūcerēmus |
|        | dūcerētis | dūcērēminī |
|        | dūcerent  | dūcērant |

Perf.  | dūxerīm   | dūxēmus  | ducta sim |
|        | dūxēritis | ductae sīmus |
|        | dūxerint  | ducta sit |

Plpf.  | dūxissem  | dūxisēmus | ducta essem |
|        | dūxisētis | ductae essēmus |
|        | dūxisent  | ductae essent |

Imperative

dūc(e)  | dūcēte  | lead!

Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>leading</th>
<th>having been led</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>dūcēns (gen. dūcentis)</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um</td>
<td>having been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ductūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to lead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>to lead</th>
<th>to be led</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūcī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>dūxisse</td>
<td>ductum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ductūrum esse</td>
<td>to be going to lead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Synopsis: Third Conjugation

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take, seize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>active</th>
<th>translation</th>
<th>passive</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td><em>I take</em></td>
<td>capior</td>
<td><em>I am (being) taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capis</td>
<td>caperis</td>
<td>capimini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td><em>I was taking</em></td>
<td>capiēbar</td>
<td><em>I was (being) taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbāris</td>
<td>capiēbāminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td><em>I will take</em></td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td><em>I will be taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiēris</td>
<td>capiēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiētur</td>
<td>capiētunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td><em>I have taken</em></td>
<td>capta sum</td>
<td><em>I have been taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēpistī</td>
<td>capta est</td>
<td>captae estis</td>
<td><em>was taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>capta</td>
<td>captae sunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td><em>I had taken</em></td>
<td>capta eram</td>
<td><em>I had been taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>capta erās</td>
<td>captae erātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>capta erant</td>
<td>captae erant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>cēperō</td>
<td><em>I will have taken</em></td>
<td>capta erō</td>
<td><em>I will have been taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>capta eris</td>
<td>captae eritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>capta erit</td>
<td>captae erunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>same as</td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>same as indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiās</td>
<td>capiāris</td>
<td>capiāminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
<td>caperēmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td>caperēris</td>
<td>caperēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>caperent</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
<td>capta sim</td>
<td>captae sīmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperīs</td>
<td>capta sīs</td>
<td>captae sītis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>capta sit</td>
<td>captae sint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>cēpissem</td>
<td>capta essem</td>
<td>captae essēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēpissem</td>
<td>capta essēs</td>
<td>captae essētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
<td>capta esset</td>
<td>captae essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative</strong></td>
<td>capē</td>
<td>take!</td>
<td>capētē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participle</strong></td>
<td>capiēns (gen. capientis)</td>
<td>taking</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>having been taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to take</td>
<td>capiendus, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to be taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive</strong></td>
<td>capere</td>
<td><em>to take</em></td>
<td>capī</td>
<td><em>to be taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>cēpisse</td>
<td><em>to have taken</em></td>
<td>captum esse</td>
<td><em>to have been taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>captūrum esse</td>
<td><em>to be going to take</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Synopsis: Fourth Conjugation**

**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>translation</th>
<th>passive</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sciō scīmus</td>
<td><em>I know</em></td>
<td>scior scīmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīs scītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīris scīminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sciē</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīturm sciuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>sciēbam scīēbāmus</td>
<td><em>I was knowing</em></td>
<td>sciēbar scīēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīēbās scīēbātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīēbāris scīēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīēbat scīēbant</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīēbātur scīēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>sciam scīēmus</td>
<td><em>I will know</em></td>
<td>sciar scīēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīēs scīētis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīēris scīēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sciet scient</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīētur scīentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>scīvī scīvimus</td>
<td><em>I have known</em></td>
<td>scīta sum scītae sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīvistī scīvistis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta es scītae estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīvīt scīvīrunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta est scītae sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>scīveram scīverāmus</td>
<td><em>I had known</em></td>
<td>scīta eram scītae erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīverās scīverātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta erās scītae erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīverat scīverant</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta erat scītae erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>scīverō scīverimus</td>
<td><em>I will have known</em></td>
<td>scīta erō scītae erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīveris scīverītis</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta eris scītae eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scīverit scīverint</td>
<td></td>
<td>scīta erit scītae erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Subjunctive** | | | |
| Pres. | sciam scīamus | same as | sciar scīamur | same as indicative |
| | scīās scīātis | indicative | scīāris scīāminī |
| | sciē | | scīētur scīentur |
| Impf. | scīrem scīrēmus | | scīrer scīrēmur |
| | scīrēs scīrētis | | scīrēris scīrēminī |
| | scīret scīrent | | scīrētur scīrentur |
| Perf. | scīverim scīverīmus | | scīta sim scītae simus |
| | scīverīs scīverītis | | scīta sis scītae sūtis |
| | scīverit scīverint | | scīta sit scītae sint |
| Plpf. | scīvissem scīvissemus | | scīta essem scītae essēmus |
| | scīvissēs scīvissētis | | scīta essēs scītae essētis |
| | scīvisset scīvissent | | scīta esset scītae essent |

| **Imperative** | | | |
| | sci scīte | *know!* | | |

| **Participle** | | | |
| Pres. | sciēns (gen. scientis) | knowing | scĭtus, -a, -um | having been known |
| Perf. | | | | going to be known |
| Fut. | scītūrus, -a, -um | going to know | sciendus, -a, -um | going to be known |

| **Infinitive** | | | |
| Pres. | scīre | to know | scīrī | to be known |
| Perf. | scīvisse | to have known | scītum esse | to have been known |
| Fut. | scītūrum esse | to be going to know | | |
## Synopsis: sum and possum

### Indicative

| Tense | Subject Pronoun | Auxiliary | Main Verb | Translation | Translation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am able, can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>es</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>posseum</td>
<td>I am able, can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>est</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>potestunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>eram</td>
<td>erēmus</td>
<td>I was</td>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>I was able, could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erās</td>
<td>erētis</td>
<td>poterās</td>
<td>poterātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>poterat</td>
<td>poterant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>erō</td>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>I will be</td>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>I will be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cris</td>
<td>eritis</td>
<td>poteris</td>
<td>poterīris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erunt</td>
<td>poterīt</td>
<td>poterunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fuī</td>
<td>fuimus</td>
<td>I have been,</td>
<td>potūī</td>
<td>I have been able,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuistī</td>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>potuiśīsfīs</td>
<td>potuiśītis</td>
<td>I was able, could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fuērunt</td>
<td>potuit</td>
<td>potuērunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>fueram</td>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
<td>I had been</td>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>I had been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td>potuerās</td>
<td>potuerātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>fuerant</td>
<td>potuerat</td>
<td>potuerant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>fuerō</td>
<td>fuerīmus</td>
<td>I will have been</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td>I will have been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fuerītis</td>
<td>potuerīs</td>
<td>potuerītis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerīnt</td>
<td>potuerīt</td>
<td>potuerīnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td>same as</td>
<td>same as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sēs</td>
<td>sētis</td>
<td>possēs</td>
<td>possētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
<td>posset</td>
<td>possent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>possēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>possēs</td>
<td>possētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>posset</td>
<td>possent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerīmus</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
<td>potuerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerīs</td>
<td>fuerītis</td>
<td>potuerīs</td>
<td>potuerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerīnt</td>
<td>potuerīt</td>
<td>potuerīnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>fuissem</td>
<td>fuisēmus</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
<td>potuisēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisēs</td>
<td>fuisētis</td>
<td>potuisēs</td>
<td>potuisētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>fuissent</td>
<td>potuisset</td>
<td>potuisent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xxx</td>
<td>xxx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>to have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>futūrum esse*</td>
<td>to be going to be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* alternative = fore

**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be, 165  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, 3  
**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 40  
**dēsum, -esse, -fuī:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6  
**praesum, -esse, -fuī:** be over, preside over, 2  
**intersum, -esse, -fuī:** take part in, engage in, 1  
**subsum, -esse, -fuī:** be near, close at hand, 1
**Synopsis: eō, īre**

*eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
<th>active</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>eō īmus</td>
<td><em>I go</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iēs ītis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it īunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impf.</strong></td>
<td>ībam ībāmus</td>
<td><em>I was going</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībās ībātis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībat ībant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>ībō ībimus</td>
<td><em>I will go</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībis ībitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībit ībunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>ī īimus</td>
<td><em>I went, have gone</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īstī īstis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īit īērunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plpf.</strong></td>
<td>ieram īerāmus</td>
<td><em>I had gone</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ierās īerātis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ierat īerant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. Pf.</strong></td>
<td>ierō īerimus</td>
<td><em>I will have gone</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ieris īeritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ierit īerint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Subjunctive** | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| **Pres.**       | cam ēāmus | same as indicative |
| cās cātis       |         |             |
| eāt eant        |         |             |
| **Impf.**       | īrem īrēmus |             |
| īrēs īrētis     |         |             |
| īret īrent      |         |             |
| **Perf.**       | ierim īerimus |             |
| ieris īeritis   |         |             |
| ierit īerint    |         |             |
| **Plpf.**       | īssem īssēmus |             |
| īssēs īssētis   |         |             |
| īssēt īssent    |         |             |

| **Imperative** | i īte |

| **Participle** | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| **Pres.**      | iēns (euntis) | going |
| **Perf.**      | ---            |      |
| **Fut.**       | itūrus, -a, -um | going to go |

| **Infinitive** | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| **Pres.**      | īre | to go |
| **Perf.**      | īsse | to have gone |
| **Fut.**       | ītūrum esse | to be going to go |

**Compound verbs**

- adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2
- eō, īre, īvī, ītum: to go, come, 4
- exeō, -īre, -īī (īvī), -ītus: go out, 4
- ineō, -īre, īī, -ītum: go into, enter, 1
- intereō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: to die, perish, 3
- introeō, -īre, īī, -ītum: go into, enter, 1
- obeō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: go to meet, oppose 1
- prōdeō, -īre, īī, -ītum: advance, go forth, 1
- redeō, -īre, -īvī: go back, return, 1
- subeō, -īre, īī, -ītum: go up to, approach, 1
- trāneō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus: go across, pass, 6
### Synopsis: volō, velle, volūī

**volō, velle, volūī: to wish, want**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volūī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluerās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Pf.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluerit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Subjunctive | |
| Pres. | velim | velimus | same as indicative |
| | velis | velitis | |
| | velit | velint | |
| Impf. | vellem | vellēmus | |
| | vellēs | vellētis | |
| | vellet | vellent | |
| Perf. | voluerim | voluerīmus | |
| | voluerīs | voluerītis | |
| | voluerit | voluerint | |
| Plpf. | voluissem | voluissēmus | |
| | voluisssēs | voluisssētis | |
| | voluisset | voluisssent | |

| Imperative | |
| xxxx | xxxx | wish! |

| Participle | |
| Pres. | volēns (gen. volentis) | wishing |
| Perf. | xxxx | |
| Fut. | xxxx | |

| Infinitive | |
| Pres. | velle | to wish |
| Perf. | voluisse | to have wished |
| Fut. | xxxx | |

→ irregular present tense (not volam)  
1pg. 14, 46  
2pg. 28, 42, 58, 60

→ irregular imperfect tense (irreg. velle)  
3pg. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62

→ irregular infinitive
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Person</th>
<th>Latin Form</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deponent</strong></td>
<td>sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Form</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>I follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequeris</td>
<td>sequeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>I was following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequēbāris</td>
<td>sequēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequēbātur</td>
<td>sequēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>I will follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequēris</td>
<td>sequēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequētur</td>
<td>sequētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>secūta sum</td>
<td>I have followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta es</td>
<td>secūta es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta est</td>
<td>secūta est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>secūta eram</td>
<td>I had followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta erās</td>
<td>secūta erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta erat</td>
<td>secūta erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.. Pf.</td>
<td>secūta erō</td>
<td>I will have followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta eris</td>
<td>secūta eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta erit</td>
<td>secūta erit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Form</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>same as indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequāris</td>
<td>sequāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequātur</td>
<td>sequātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>sequerer</td>
<td>sequerēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequerēris</td>
<td>sequerēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sequerētur</td>
<td>sequerentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>secūta sim</td>
<td>secūta simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta sis</td>
<td>secūta sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta sit</td>
<td>secūta sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plpf.</td>
<td>secūta essem secūta essēmus</td>
<td>secūta essem secūta essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta essēs</td>
<td>secūta essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secūta esset</td>
<td>secūta essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sequere</td>
<td>follow!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequitor</td>
<td>follow!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Person</th>
<th>Latin Form</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sequēns (gen. sequentis)</td>
<td>following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>secūtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>having followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>secūtūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>going to follow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Person</th>
<th>Latin Form</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sequē</td>
<td>to follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>secūtum esse</td>
<td>to have followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>secūtūrum esse</td>
<td>to be going to follow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Relative Clause of Purpose

There are two different types of purpose (final) clauses: adverbial and relative. Adverbial purpose clauses are introduced by ut inē and are regularly translated with the modal verbs may and might. Relative clauses of purpose behave in the same way as adverbial purpose clauses—employing present subjunctive in primary sequence and imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence—but they are introduced by a relative pronoun.

There are only two examples of relative clauses of purpose in this commentary. When you translate these clauses, use the modal verbs may/might or would/should depending on the context:

\[
\text{legātōs...mittunt quī dicerent... they sent envoys who would/should say... p. 11} \\
\text{nāvēs...quibus reportārī possent ships by which they might be able to be carried back p. 19}
\]

= so that they might say...

2. Relative Clause of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clause)

The function of a relative clause of characteristic is to clarify what sort of person or what sort of thing the antecedent is. This clause governs a subjunctive verb and very often modifies a general or indefinite antecedent (e.g. he is a man who flees from danger). The indicative mood, by contrast, suggests that the antecedent is a particular someone doing something (e.g. he is the man who fled from danger).

\[
e.g. \text{Is est quī ā periculō fugat. He is (the sort of) one who flees from danger.}
\]

or \[
\text{Is est quī ā periculō fugat. He is (the sort of) one who would flee from danger.}
\]

This type of relative clause can be causal, concessive, or consecutive (result) in sense depending on the context. While you should translate pf. and plpf. subjunctives as you would an indicative, you may translate pres. and impf. subjunctives two different ways: (a) as an indicative or (b) as a potential subjunctive with the modal verb would (see above). Caesar frequently uses this clause when the antecedent is (a) missing, as in the example above, (b) a generic noun, or (c) an indefinite pronoun (e.g. is, ea, id).

\[
ea quae...pertinērent those (sort of) things which pertained/would pertain to setting out p. 4
\]
\[
regnum...quod pater ante habuerit (the sort of) kingdom which his father held before p. 6
\]
\[
id quod fēcerit that (sort of thing) which he did p. 40
\]
\[
eique...sum quī...terrear I am not (such a) one who am terrified/would be terrified p. 46
\]

3. Relative Clause in Indirect Discourse

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses—including including relative clauses—become subjunctive. Caesar frequently uses quod-clauses and conditional clauses (si-clauses) in this way, but his use of relative clauses in indirect discourse is surprisingly rare:

\[
\text{quod imperium obtentūrus esset because he was about to obtain the command p. 6}
\]
\[
\text{quod...pendere consuēsset which he had been accustomed to pay p. 40}
\]
\[
\text{quōrum alter mīlia...absit one of whom is about fifty miles away p. 42}
\]

In most instances, these subjunctives do not require a special translation and therefore should be translated in the tense in which you find them. If the relative clause was originally a relative clause of purpose or a relative clause of characteristic, however, you should translate it accordingly.
Conditional sentences in indirect discourse undergo a number of changes that make them more difficult to identify and translate than their counterparts in direct discourse.

I. Identifying conditions in direct discourse:

If-then clauses are called conditions or conditional sentences. All conditions have two parts: (a) the protasis (premise, if-clause, or conditional) and (b) the apodosis (result, then-clause, or consequent). In order to identify one of the six main types of conditions below, you must identify the tense and mood of the verbs in both the protasis and apodosis. If the tense and moods of the verbs do not fit one of the six types, we call such a sentence a mixed condition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>protasis</th>
<th>apodosis</th>
<th>example in translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>If you believe, you are mistaken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>If you believed, you were mistaken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future more vivid</td>
<td>fut./fut. pf.</td>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>If you were believing, you would be mistaken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future less vivid</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>If you had believed, you would have been mistaken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present contrafactual</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past contrafactual</td>
<td>plpf. subj.</td>
<td>plpf. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Identifying conditions in indirect discourse

In indirect discourse, every apodosis becomes an infinitive and every protasis—whether originally indicative or subjunctive—becomes subjunctive. In secondary sequence, the infinitive remains the same, but the protasis undergoes more changes (often becoming impf. subj.), which makes the condition difficult to identify. Below is a summary of those changes.

### Indicative Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Present: If you believe, you are wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sí credis, errās.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec credās, tē errāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sí credis, errās.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec credērēs, tē errāre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past: If you believed, you were wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvisīt.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec credērēs/crediderīs, tē errāvisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvisīt.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec credērēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future More Vivid: If you believe, you will be wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sī credēs, errābis.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec credēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sī credēs, errābis.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec credērēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Less Vivid: If you should believe, you would be wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sī credēs, errēs.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec credēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sī credēs, errēs.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec credērēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Contrafactual: If you were believing, you would be wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sī crederēs, errārēs.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Contrafactual: If you had believed, you would have been wrong.</th>
<th>indirect discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primary dícō “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”</td>
<td>dícō sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”</td>
<td>dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Caesar Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all words in the Caesar selections that occur five or more times arranged in an alphabetized vocabulary list. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesars’ words in the selections and counting them. Digital flashcards are available online.

ä, ab: (away) from, by, 80
absum, -esse, āfuī: be absent, lack, 6
ac: and, and also, and even, 24
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 5
accidō, -ere, accidī: to happen, fall to, 13
accipiō: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10
ad: to, toward; near, at 110
Aduātucī, -ōrum m.: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 7
ager, agrī m.: field, land; farm, 8
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 8
alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 13
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 12
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 5
Ambiorix, -rigis m.: Ambiorix, 15
amicitia, -ae, f.: friendship, 12
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum: turn mind to, notice 5
animus, -ī m.: mind, spirit; pl. courage, 6
annus, -ī m.: year, 11
appellō (1): call, call by name, 5
apud: among, at the house of (acc.), 7
arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum: to judge, think, 10
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 7
ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2
at: but; mind you; but, you say, 7
atque: and, and also, and even, 60
aut: or (aut...aut – either...or), 32
autem: however, moreover, 5
barbarus, -a, -um: foreign, savage, 5
Belgae, -ārum m.: Belgians, 6
bellum, -ī, n.: war, 16
Britannia, -ae f.: Britain, 6
Caesar, -aris m.: Caesar, 40
calamitās, -tātis f.: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum: to take, capture, seize, 11
castra, -ōrum n.: camp, encampment, 23
casus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall 5
causa, -ae f.: reason, cause; case, 21
celeritās, -tātis f.: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5
celeriter: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6
certus, -a, -um: definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8
Cicero, Cicerōnis m.: Cicero 14
circiter: (round) about, not far from, 7
circumveniō, -īre: to come around, encircle, 6
cīvitās cīvitātis, f.: state, citizenship, 20
cœpi, coepisse, coēptum: to begin, 9
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum: to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum: to collect; compel, 11
cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 14
commūnis, -e: common, 6
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6
complūres n.: several, 5
concilium, -ii n.: meeting, rendezvous, 6
confirmō (1): make strong, confirm strengthen, 5
co(n)iciō, -ere, -iēcī: throw together, throw, take oneself, 10
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnāitus sum: to try, 6
cōnsilium, -ii n.: plan, counsel, 12
conspicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus: see, behold, 5
constituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtus: decide, establish, resolve, 14
consuecō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum: to accustom, 8
consuētūdo, -inis f.: custom, habit, 5
contineō, -ere, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 9
contrōversia, -ae f.: dispute, debate, 7
conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus: come together, assemble, 9
copia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 12
Cotta, -ae m.: Cotta, 10
Crassus, -ī m.: Crassus, 5
cum: with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86
dē: (down) from; about, concerning, 41
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum: report, offer 8
dēmonstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 5
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum: be lacking, lack, fail, 6
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus: say, speak, tell, call, name, 18
dīēs, -ēī m./f.: day, time, season, 33
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: to go away, depart, 9
disciplīna, -ae f.: training, instruction, 5
dō, dare, dedī, datum: give; grant, 18
Druidēs, -um m.: Druids, 6
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus: lead, draw; consider, 7
dum: while, as long as, until, 6
duo, duae, duo: two, 8
ē, ex: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72
Eburōnēs, -um m.: Eburones (German), 5
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: make, form, 5
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus: go out, disembark, 5
equēs, equētis m.: horseman, rider, 12
equītātus, -ūs m.: cavalry, 5
et: and, also, even, 167
etiam: also, even, besides, 8
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>etsī:</td>
<td>even if, although, though</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercitus, -ūs m.:</td>
<td>(trained) army</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>existimō (1):</td>
<td>judge, consider, think</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e:</td>
<td>easy; adv. facile, easily</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum:</td>
<td>do, make, perform; grant</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facultās, -tātis f.:</td>
<td>opportunity, power, skill, ability</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferē:</td>
<td>almost, nearly, closely</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferō, ferre, tuī, lātus:</td>
<td>carry, bear, endure</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filius, -ī m.:</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis, -is m./f.:</td>
<td>end, border; territory</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finitimus, -a, -um:</td>
<td>neighboring; subst. neighbors</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flāmen, -inis n.:</td>
<td>river, stream</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e:</td>
<td>strong, brave, valiant</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frōmentum, -ī n.:</td>
<td>grain</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallia, -ae f.:</td>
<td>Gaul</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallus, -a, -um:</td>
<td>Gallic; subst. a Gaul</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genus, generis, n.:</td>
<td>origin, kind, sort</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germānus, -a, -um:</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:</td>
<td>carry (on), wage</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravīs, -e:</td>
<td>heavy, serious, severe; venerable</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habēō, -ēre, habuī, -itus:</td>
<td>have, hold; consider</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helvētius, -a, -um:</td>
<td>Helvetian; subst. a Helvetian</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiberna, -ōrum n.:</td>
<td>winter-quarters</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hic, haec, hoc:</td>
<td>this, these</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homō, -inis m./f.:</td>
<td>man, mortal, human</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostis, -is m./f.:</td>
<td>stranger, enemy, foe</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi:</td>
<td>there, in that place</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īdem, cadem, idem:</td>
<td>the same</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille, illa, illud:</td>
<td>that, those</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impedimentum, -ī n.:</td>
<td>baggage, impediment</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperium, -ī n.:</td>
<td>command, power</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperō (1):</td>
<td>command, order, bid</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impetus, -ūs m.:</td>
<td>attack, assault, onset</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in:</td>
<td>in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.)</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incitō (1):</td>
<td>put into motion, urge on</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferō, -ferre, -tuī, illātum:</td>
<td>wage, carry on</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initium, -ī n.:</td>
<td>beginning, entrance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter:</td>
<td>between, among (+ acc.)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interim:</td>
<td>meanwhile, in the meantime</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interficīō, -ere, fēcī, -fectum:</td>
<td>kill, slay, destroy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intermittō, -ere:</td>
<td>interrupt, discontinue, leave off</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipse, ipsa, ipsum:</td>
<td>-self; the very</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is, ea, id:</td>
<td>this, that; he, she, it</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ita:</td>
<td>so, thus</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itaque:</td>
<td>and so</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter, itineris n.:</td>
<td>way, road, route, journey</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum:</td>
<td>to order, command</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary

Labiensus, ī m.: Labienus, 5
lēgātus, -ī m.: an envoy, legate, 16
legio, -onis f.: legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32
licet: impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5
littera, -ae f.: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12
locus, -ī m.: place, region, location, 31
longē: far, at a distant, 6
longus -a, -um: long, 8
Lucius, -ī m.: Lucius, 10
magnitudo, -inis f.: greatness, size, 5
magnus, -a, -um: great, large; mighty, important, 29
maior, maius: greater, 6
manus, manūs, f.: hand; group, 9
maximē: exceedingly especially, 6
maximus, -a, -um: greatest, largest, 15
mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier, 33
mīlle pl. mīlia, ium n.: thousand, 9
minor, minus: less, smaller, 7
mittē, -ere, mīsī, missus: send, hurl, dismiss, 20
mors, mortis, f.: death, 9
multitudo, inis f.: multitude, population, people, 11
multus, -a, -um: much, many, 11
mūnītio, -ōnis f.: fortification, paving, 7
nam: for, 9
nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship, boat, 23
nē: lest, that not, no, not, 13
neque: and not, nor (neque…neque = neither…nor), 27
Nervī, -ōrum m.: Nervii (Belgie Gauls) 9
 nihil: nothing, 10
 nisi: if not, unless 6
nōn: not, by no means, not at all, 36
noster, nostra, nostrum: our, 36
nox, noctis, f.: night, 9
nūllus, -a, -um: none, no, no one, 9
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 13
nuntius, -ī m.: messenger, 6
ob: on account of, because of (acc.), 5
 obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 5
obtineō, -ère, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 6
omnis, omne: every, all, 72
oppugnātio, -ōnis f.: an assault, 6
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 6
ōrātio, -onis f.: speaking, speech, language, 8
ordō, -inis m.: order, line, array; status, 6
 Orgetorix, -is m.: Orgetorix, 6
pars, partis, f.: part, side, direction, 43
passus, -ūs: pace, step, 7  
 paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 9  
pāx, pācis f.: peace, quiet, rest, 6  
per: through, across (acc) 18  
perīculum, -ī n.: risk, danger, peril, 14  
permoveō, -ēre: to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5  
persuādeo, -ēre, -sūāsī, -sūāsum: persuade, convince, 12  
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī: to pertain to, reach, stretch to, 7  
perturbō (1): confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6  
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: arrive, 8  
pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5  
pētō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, aim at, 7  
plērumque: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5  
pōnō, ponere, posuī, positum: to put, place, 6  
populus, -ī m.: people, nation, 9  
possum, posse, potūī: be able, can, avail, 40  
post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5  
praemia, -ī n.: reward, prize, 5  
praestō, -āre, -stītī, -stītus: perform, show, be better, 6  
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus: check, pursue, control, 7  
prīmus -a -um: first, 15  
prīvō (1): deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5  
prō: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16  
probō (1): approve, commend, 5  
proelium, -ī n.: battle, combat, 15  
profectio, -āre, -fectum: departure, 5  
proficiscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, depart, 23  
prohibēō, -ere, -uī, -itus: keep off, prohibit, 6  
propōter: on account of, because of, 5  
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7  
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, very close, 12  
pūblicus, -a, -um: public, common, 11  
pugna, -ae f.: battle, fight, 7  
pugnō (1): to fight, 9  
Pulno, Pullos, m.: Pullo, 6  
quantus, -a, -um: how great, much, many, 6  
-quē: and, 109  
qui, quae, quod (quis? quid?): who, which, that, 226  
quidem: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6  
Quintus, -ī m.: Quintus, 6  
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 9  
ratio, ratiōnis, f.: calculation, account, method, 5  
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take back, recover, 10  
regnum, -ī n.: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8  
relinquō, -ere, -lique, -līctum: to leave behind, 7  
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, the rest of, 28
rēs, reī, f.: thing, matter, affair, business, 64
resistō, -ere, -stitī: stand still; halt; oppose, 5
Rhēnus, -ī m.: Rhine River, 9
Rhodanus, -a, -um: Rhone, 5
Rōmānus, -a, -um: of Rome, Roman, 15
Sabīnus, ī m.: Sabinus, 7
salūs, -ūtīs f.: safety, refuge; health, 10
sē: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74
sed: but, moreover, however, 13
Sēquanus, -a, -um: Sequanian, 5
sēsē: emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14
sī: if (only), whether, in case that, 30
signum -ī, n.: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
sīnc: without (abl.), 8
singulus, -a, -um: one by one, separate, 5
spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 6
spēs, -ēī f.: hope, expectation, 6
sub: under, below, beneath, underneath, 5
subitō: suddenly, 5
subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum: to follow after or behind, 7
subsidiō, ī n.: reserve troops; third line of battle, 5
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 165
summus, -a, -um: top of, highest (part of) 10
superō (1): surpass, overcome, 6
superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 9
sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, 8
suus, -a, -um: his, her, its, their own, 54
tamen: however, nevertheless, 14
tantus, -a, -um: so great, so large, 10
telum, -ī n.: projective, weapon, blow, 9
tempus, temporīs, n.: time, occasion, 11
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold, keep, 6
tertius, -a, -um: third, 8
Titurius, -ī m.: Titurius, 8
tōtus, tōtum: whole, entire, 7
trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), ītus: pass (by), 6
trēs, tria: three, 7
tum: then, at that time, 12
turris, turris f.: tower, walled tower, 7
tūtus, -a, -um: safe, secure, guarded, 7
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 5
undique: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5
ūnus, -a, -um: one, 29
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice, application, 10
ut: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two) 8
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum: use, employ (abl.), 5
vallum, -ī n.: wall, fortification, palisade, 11
venīō, -īre, vēnī, ventus: come, go, 14
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 7
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: to see, 14
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 11
vīta, -ae, f.: life, 5
volō, velle, volūī: will, wish, be willing, 13
Vorēnus, -ī m.: Vorenus, 5